

**made by Mansy**

صلى ع النبي وإدعيلى دعوة حلوة

**#دفعة المنوفية 2022**

**#قناة تالتة ثانوى 2022**

**3<sup>rd</sup>**  
**YEAR**

الصف الثالث الثانوي

كتاب الشرح



*New* **Hello!**

& Great Expectations

**1**  
Part



**Giants**  
Series

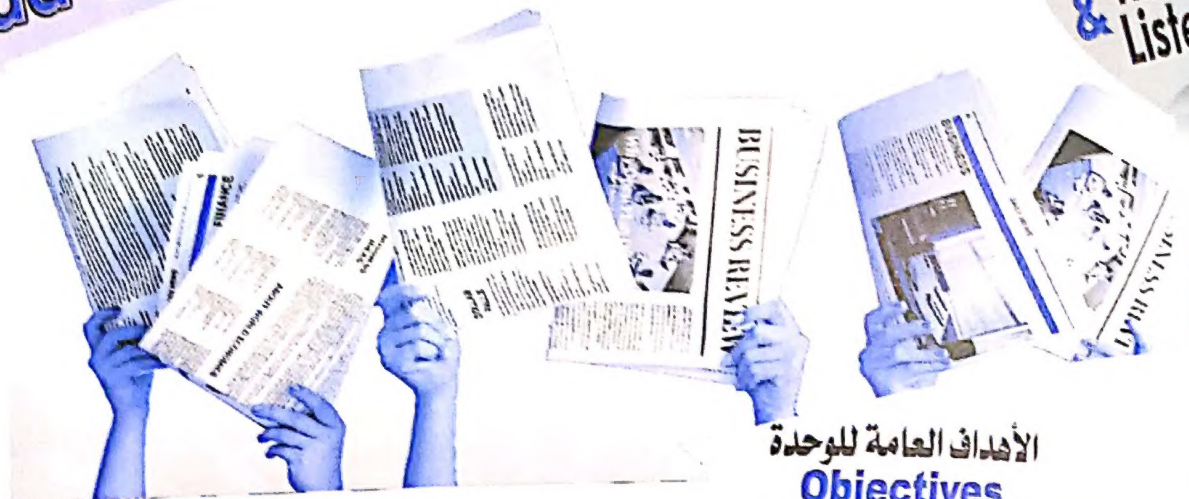
**New Hello & Great Expectations**

**كتاب العمالقة**  
**الصف الثالث الثانوي**  
**الجزء الأول**

**أسرة إعداد كُتب العمالقة**

لقد اجتهدنا...  
فإن أحسننا فمن الله  
وإن أسأنا فمنا ومن الشيطان  
اللاهع علماً يلتفتع به  
والله الموفق





## الأهداف العامة للوحدة Objectives

**Reading** Compare different newspaper styles.

**Listening** Understand the key points in a lecture.

**Language** Review past simple, past continuous and present perfect tenses

**Life skills** Identify bias and exaggeration.

**Writing** Write a persuasive essay.

**Speaking** Report an event.

## 1 Main Vocabulary

piracy	القرصنة / سرقة أدبية	factual (adj)	واقعي / حقيقي	media	
cheat (v)(n)	غشاش / غش / يفش	constant (adj)	ثابت / مستمر	social media	الاجتماعي
exaggeration	تطرف / مبالغة	balanced (adj)	متوازن	serious (adj)	خطير
tabloid	صحيفة شعبية صغيرة	spoil (v)	يفسد / يدلل	bookseller	الكتب
broadsheet	صحيفة كبيرة	strict (adj)	صارم / حازم	review	مراجعة / يراجع
bias	تحامل / انحياز	grumpy (adj)	نكد / كئيب / متأفف	lecture	ألمة
omission	إهمال / تجاوز / تقصير	trainee	متدرب	editor	رئيس تحرير
announce (v)	يعلن / يصرح / يذيع	crime	جريمة	incident	حدث / مشكلة / حدث
mislead	يضل / يخدع	criminal	مجرم	practical	لي
inaccurate (adj)	غير دقيق	nervousness	عصبية	finance	ول / تمويل
casualties	إصابات / خسائر / ضحايا	journalism	صحافة	financially (adv)	نيا / ماليا
claim (v) (n)	يطلب / يدعي / ادعاء	copyrights	حقوق الملكية	ethical	لاقى
demand (v) (n)	يطلب / طلب	convict (v) (n)	مدان / يدين	imagine	يتصور / يتخيل
compensate	يعوض / يكافئ	violate (v)	يخرق / ينتهك	extreme	مليد / متطرف
whilst	بينما / مع أن / لكن	court	محكمة	state	حالة / دولة / يصريح
headline	عنوان رئيسي	author	مؤلف	excitement	ثارة
highlight	يرز / يسلط الضوء	authorities	السلطات	deathly	ميت
illegal (adj)	غير شرعي	report (v) (n)	تقرير / يقرر	oppose	يعارض
ruin (v) (n)	يدمر / حطام	reporter (n)	مراسل صحفي	secret (n) (adj)	سري / سري
apprenticeship	فترة التدريب في المهنة	impact (v) (n)	أثر / تأثير	investigate	يتحقق / يتحرى
occur	يحدث	publisher	ناشر	emotional	عاطفي
shock (v) (n)	صدمة / يصدم	publication	نشر	quote	اقتباس
shocked (adj)	مصدوم	support (v)(n)	يدعم / يساند / الدعم	nosy (adj)	فضولي / متطفل
briefly	باختصار	interview (v)(n)	يقابل / مقابلة	identify	يعرف / يحدد
block	يسد / يحجب	mention	يذكر	likely (adv)	متوقع / من المحتمل
pirated digital copy	نسخة رقمية مسروقة	long-awaited ending	ينتظر بلهفة شديدة		نهاية طال انتظارها



## 2 Additional Vocabulary

lane	خط / ممر / حارة	compare	يقارن	reduce	يقلل / يخفض
route	طريق / مسار	description	وصف	traffic	المروور
cost(v) (n)	يكلف / تكلفة	rhyme	سجع / قافية	society (community)	مجتمع
lawyer	محامي	difference	اختلاف / فرق	contrast	تناقض
prison	سجن	display (show)	يعرض	formal	رسمي
include	يشمل / يتضمن	rescuer	منقذ	citizen	مواطن
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	freezing (adj)	متجمد	tonne	طن
guess	يخمن	product	منتج	obtain	يحصل علي
professional	مهنى / محترف	remove	يزيل	fan	معجب / مشجع
annoying	مزعج	behave	يسلك / يتصرف	warning	تحذير
actor	ممثل	copy	ينسخ / نسخة	qualities	خصائص
joke(v) (n)	نكتة / يمزح / ينكت	position	وضع / مكانة	survey	بحث / دراسة
trap	فخ / يفتك	content	محتوى / راضى	stressed	متوتر
artistic	فنى	punish	يعاقب	spread	ينشر
consequently	بالتالى / ولذلك	recognise	يدرک / يعرف	permission	إذن / تصريح
point of view	وجهة نظر	local source	مصدر محلى	former	سابق
volunteer	متطوع / يتطوع	survey	دراسة	up-to-date	جديد / حديث
voluntary	تطوعي	access	إذن بالدخول	wonder	يتساءل
personally	شخصياً	afford	يتحمل (تكلفة)	celebrity	شخصية مشهورة
affairs	شئون	dishonest	غير أمين	exist	يوجد / يعيش / يبقى حياً
common	شائع / عادى	spin	يلف (حول نفسه)	sum	مبلغ
placement	وضع	factory	مصنع	staff	طاقم عمل
prove	يثبت	article	مقال / أداة / قطعه فنية	broken	مكسور / عطلان
impression	انطباع	share	يشارك / نصيب	appear	يظهر
objective(adj)	موضوعي	manager	مدير / وكيل أعمال	argue	يجادل

## Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym	Antonym
omission	إهمال / تقصير	carelessness - failing	carefulness - success
reduce	يقلل	decrease - limit	increase - improve
voluntary	تطوعي	willing - unforced	involuntary - unwilling - forced
serious	جاد / خطير	dangerous - tough	unserious - safe
encourage	يشجع	boost - inspire - promote	discourage - depress
traditional	تقليدي	conventional - customary	unconventional - modern
bias	انحياز / تحامل	intolerance - unfairness	equality - objectivity
piracy	قرصنة	theft - stealing - robbery	originality - genuine
cheat	غش / يفش	trick - deceive - defraud	promote - support
compensate	يعوض	balance - make up for	lose - damage



### 3 Prepositions



### 4 Expressions & Idioms

be interested in	مهتم بـ	a large sum of money	مبلغ كبير من المال
point of view	وجهة نظر	give a reason why	عطي سببا لماذا
be due to	على وشك	communicate in	واصل بـ (لغة)
online book piracy	قرصنة الكتب الالكترونية	record snowstorm	صفة تاجية قياسية
wait with bated breath	ينتظر بلهفة شديدة	keep up-to-date	في محدثا
long-awaited	طال انتظاره	make every effort	ذل أقصى جهد
without a break	بدون راحة	make money from	كسب من
digital version	نسخة رقمية	do (cause) damage	سبب تلف
give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن	do wrong	نظن

### 5 Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
persuade (يقنع)	persuasion (الإقناع)	persuasive (قانع)
differ (يختلف)	difference (اختلاف / فرق)	different (مختلف)
organise (ينظم)	organisation (منظمة)	organised (منظم)
endanger (يعرض للخطر)	danger (خطر)	dangerous (خطير)
solve (يحل)	solution (حل)	solvent (قادر على الحل)
occur (يحدث)	occurrence (حدث / حدوث)	
differ (يفرق)	difference (اختلاف / فرق)	different (مختلف)
surprise (يدهش)	surprise (دهشة)	surprised (مدهش)
		surprising (مدهش)



6

## Definitions

piracy

القرصنة / سرقة أدبية

the practice of illegally copying a computer program, music, a film, etc. and selling it

cheat

غشاش / غش

to behave in a dishonest way in order to get what you want

omission

إهمال / تجاوز / تقصير

when something has not been included that should have been

announce

يعلن / يصرح / يذيع

to state or make known, especially publicly

compensate

يعوض / يكافئ

to pay someone money in exchange for something that has been lost or damaged or for some problems

headline

عنوان رئيسي

a line of words printed in large letters as the title of a story in a newspaper

ruin

يدمر

to spoil or destroy severely or completely

illegal

غير شرعي

against the law; not allowed by law

mislead

يضلل / يخدع

to cause someone to believe something that is not true

inaccurate

غير دقيق

not completely correct or exact, or not able to do something correctly or exactly

bias

تحامل / انحياز

often supporting or opposing a particular person or thing in an unfair way by allowing personal opinions to influence your judgment



tabloid

It has small pages and large photos. They have short stories which are easy to explain. They use simple language rhymes or jokes.



broad sheet

It is a more formal newspaper with large pages. They have more international news. Articles are more factual and use longer sentences and paragraphs. They have fewer photos than tabloid newspapers.



## Listening

## A student Reporter is Interviewing a Journalist

S. Reporter

How did you get into journalism?

Journalist

I started as a **trainee** on a **local newspaper** and after two weeks was chosen for a three-year **apprenticeship**.

S. Reporter

What advice can you give a student **reporter** like me?

Journalist

When you're **doing** an **interview** don't ask too many questions, let the person talk and always listen very **carefully**, give both





S. Reporter

Journalist

S. Reporter

Journalist

S. Reporter

Journalist

S. Reporter

Journalist

S. Reporter

Journalist

sides of the **accurate**. If you're writing, not to **show** your own **feelings** or **opinions**.

Have you ever interviewed anyone **famous**? I've interviewed lots of **celebrities** including Amr Diab, Carmen Suleiman and Sandy.

Who was the most **annoying** person you've interviewed? There have been **quite** a few; one was a very **grumpy**, well-known **actor**.

Is it a **hard** job?

It can be sometimes but journalists usually love what they do.

What **kind of** person does a good journalist have to be?

You **obviously** have to be **good at** writing, but you also have to be a **naturally nosy** person and you really need to **be interested** in people.

What **advice** would you **give** to young people listening who want to become journalists?

Get some **experience** on the school newspaper or work for a local newspaper for free and don't **give up**, keep trying until someone gives you a **chance**. I did **voluntary jobs** while I was at university and I **applied for** 18 jobs before I got my first **paid job** 12 years later. I'm still here.

## Media bias

So, moving on, what exactly is **bias**? First of all, let's look at bias by **omission**. This means leaving something out, for example, a **fact** or a **quote** which maybe doesn't **support** the writer's **point of view**.

Let's look at some examples; **imagine** Heba over here every morning **checking** the same **website** to read the news. She likes the way the **articles** are written and that she is getting good information, but one day her friend Marwa over **recommends** a different news **site**. When Heba looks at this, she sees completely different news stories with a very different point of view. Let's say that on Heba's **website** there is a big **story** about how angry people are that a local **factory** is about to close. Marwa's website has the same story, but it doesn't **mention** that anyone is **angry**. The writer has **omitted** this information to make us feel **differently** about the story.

The second type of bias might be **placement**. On Heba's website the story is at the top of the page with a big photo and large text. This gives the **impression** that it's an important story, but on Marwa's website the story is very short on the third page and very low down on the page where people might not see it. The third type of bias is **spin**. The writer tries to make the reader feel the same way they do about a story and doesn't **present** a **balanced** point of view. They do this by choosing certain words for example "**argued** the factory **manager**" **instead of** "**agreed** the factory **manager**". Secondly, they choose to **include** certain information and **exclude** other information.

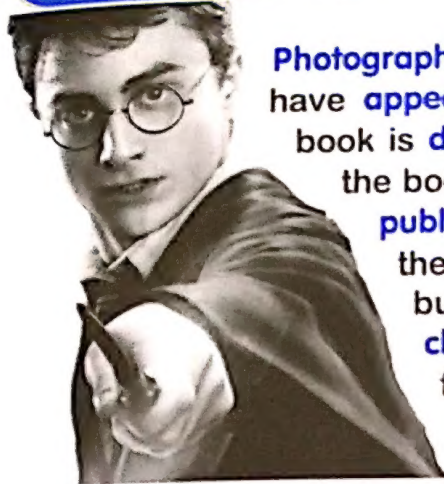


Thirdly, they give only one point of view. In our example, the journalist gives the reaction of the **staff** in the **factory** but not the **managers**. It **misleads** the reader into thinking it is a bad thing. **On the other hand**, in Marwa's story it is presented as a good thing. It mentions that there is a lot of **pollution** caused by the factory.



## Reading

### New Harry Potter book shown online



**Photographs** of all 784 pages of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows have **appeared on the internet**, four days before J. K. Rowling's final book is **due to be published**. It is not known who took photographs of the book, whose **contents** have been kept a **secret** before the book is **published** at, 12.01 am **on Saturday**. Some **websites** have **removed** the photos after **receiving warnings** from the **publisher's lawyers**, but photos of the book can still be read on other sites. It is also **claimed** that some people were **typing** up copies of the book from the photos to **share on social media**. This all **occurred despite** the careful **security** which has been put in place before the book is published. This **included** asking **booksellers** not to tell the **media** when or if they had **copies** of the book. The incident **highlights** the problems of online book **piracy**, which is becoming much more **common**.

### Internet cheats ruins Potter surprise

Just four days before J.K. Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is **published**, an internet **cheat** has **shared** every page of the book **online**. This has **ruined the surprise** for millions of readers, who have been **waiting with bated breath to find out** what happens to the **famous character**. Several **websites** show photographs of every page of Harry Potter and the **Deathly Hallows**, which means that you can read the whole book online, **including the long awaited ending**. Lawyers have **demand**ed that the websites stop showing the **illegal** photos and, **fortunately**, some websites have agreed. However, other people have **typed up** the text from the photos and are likely to **share** the story on other websites. **Fans** of Harry Potter were **shocked** by the news. "It's terrible," says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to buy the new book for her children. "The person who has done this should be **put in prison**."

### Punished for stealing books!

An **International Crime Court** in Denmark **punished** a twenty-year-old student for selling pirated digital copies of textbooks. The student was punished and **required** to pay a large sum of money for her **crime**.



Piracy is a Crime!

When asked to **give a reason** why she **own the rights to**, the student said she was helping students **obtain** books at a lower price. It was made clear to her that copying e-books that she does not own the rights to is **violating copyright**. In addition to being punished by law, she is also **required** to pay a large **sum** of money for **piracy**.

## Ever Given blocks Suez Canal

Rescuers have finally moved a **huge ship** which was **blocking** traffic going through the Suez **Canal**. The ship, called Ever Given, is 400 metres long and **weighs** 200,000 **tonnes**. It is **one of** the largest of this **type** of ship in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal on 23 March when there was a **sand storm**. The ship's **captain** said that a **strong wind spun** the ship so that both its front and back hit the **sides** of the canal. The **result** was that no ships could travel past the canal for **nearly** a week.

Yesterday, more than 380 ships were waiting to pass through the canal. Many ship **companies** wanted to know if there was another **route**.

A few of the ship's captains **decided to** go around the South of Africa **instead** but this **added** about eight days to their journeys. At the same time, some countries **announced** that they would send **products** by air, but this is about three times as expensive than sending it by ship.

The **accident** was terrible for businesses around the world. That is because **around** 12% of the world's business products pass through the canal each day. The accident **cost** both Egypt and other countries millions of dollars.

**Luckily**, smaller Egyptian boats were finally able to move the Ever Given yesterday. They did an amazing job. They moved around 30,000 square metres of sand under the ship before they took the ship to the Great Bitter Lake, **in the middle** of the canal. The canal **authorities** told us that they won't know the true cause of the accident until they investigate.

**Although** the canal is open for ships again today, traffic through the canal will not return to **normal** for many days. **Experts** are **investigating** the possible **causes** of the accident. They are also studying the accident **carefully** to see how Egypt can **compensated financially**.

**A) Millions to be spent on a project that will make our traffic worse!**

Car **drivers** are angry about plans to open a new bus **lane** from the city centre to the airport, which will **cost** LE200 million, will stop all cars using Nile Road, one of the most important roads into the city. "**Traffic** in the city is already **terrible**," says businesswoman Mrs Joan Batas. "If they close Yellow Road, it will be even worse." Another business person who uses South Road **regularly**, Mr Jason, says, "Why are they **planning** to close these roads? With so many cars in the city, they need to build new ones. No one wants to use buses because they are too slow."



There are many reasons why the university is closing the Yellow Road. It takes 10 minutes **fast** to get to the city. **attract** students will also **reduce** the number of bikes and cars. **persuade** people to help **reduce** traffic.

Tarek's reports **balance** the top of the page. This is **too** good.

For players, their best reports are Tarek's reports the **result**.

bias by placement

bias by omission

bias by spin



### B) New route to serve university

There are **plans for** a new bus **lane** from the city **centre** to the university. The LE200-million **project** will mean closing Yellow Road to cars, but will **make** the journey by bus 30 minutes **faster**. The **organisers** believe the project will help **attract** students to the university and that the **electric** buses will also **reduce pollution**. The bus lane will also be used by bikes and taxis. The project is part of a **long-term** plan to **persuade** people to use **public transport** rather than driving, to help **reduce** traffic and air pollution.



Tarek loves a football team called the Greens. He writes **reports** on their matches, online, but the reports do not give a **balanced point of view**! He always puts the Greens' report at the top of the page when they **win**, but not when they **lose**! This is **bias by placement** He always puts a **spin** on his stories, too.

Read about bias

For example, when the Greens lose, it is because they did not have their best players. However, he does not report the fact that the other team did not have their best players when the Greens win! This is **bias by omission**. Nevertheless, Tarek's reports are not **inaccurate**: he does not want to **mislead** you and the reports tell you what really happened in the match. After all, he cannot change the **result**!

#### bias by placement

التحيز حسب الموضع

#### bias by omission

التحيز عن طريق الإغفال

#### bias by spin

التحيز عن طريق التزييف

- ▶ position of the article on the page.

The stories at the top of the page are the ones which the editor thinks are the most important.

- ▶ leaving out certain stories

Leaving out facts or certain information which does not agree with the writer's point of view.

Choosing examples or data which support one side. Presenting an opinion as a fact.

Using emotional language to persuade the reader.

احرص على اقتناء سلسلة العمالة  
في اللغة الإنجليزية

GIANTS





## 7 Notice the Difference

headline	عناوين الأخبار
staff	عاملون / موظفون
nearly	تقريباً
accident	حادثة
cost	يكلف / تكلفة
hard (adj- adv)	صعب / بجد
persuade	يقنع (شخص بعمل شيء مع إعطاء أسباب)
fortunately	لحسن الحظ
examine	يفحص شيء أو شخص لكي يصدري
publish	ينشر (كتب / مقالات .....
compare with	يقارن لتوضيح الاختلاف
rule	يحكم
expert (in - on - at)	خبير في
strict	صارم / حازم
effect	أثر / تأثير

deadline	ي نهائي / طائفة
crew	
nearby	
incident	في قصة / جريدة / مشكلة / حادثة
coast	
hardly	بالكاد / قلما
convince	يخص أو نفسه بشيء
unfortunately	بظ
check	شي ليكتشف اذا كان في حالة جيدة أولا
spread	مرض / أخبار / إشاعات
compare to	يوضح التشابه / يشبه به
role	
export (to)	
serious	نظير
affect	

- 1 The AIDS virus is ..... through contact with blood and other body fluids.  
 a broadcasted b spread c come out d published
- 2 The press can have a powerful ..... on the way people react in everyday life.  
 a effectively b effective c effect d affect
- 3 In what way does the sun ..... other planets?  
 a effectively b effective c effect d affect
- 4 Poor people suffer from the high ..... of living.  
 a cast b cost c coast d coastal
- 5 It's been ..... three months since my last haircut.  
 a nearly b nearby c near d near to
- 6 The story was seized on by the tabloid press, who printed it under huge .....  
 a online b between lines c deadlines d headlines
- 7 ....., I was robbed of my gold watch last night.  
 a Unfortunate b Fortunate c Unfortunately d Fortunately
- 8 The aircraft carries a ..... of seven.  
 a crew b stuff c staff d crow
- 9 The country is now facing a ..... political crisis.  
 a serious b seriously c seriousness d strict
- 10 ..... in the field of child psychology warn of the dangers of social media.  
 a Experienced b Imports c Experts d Exports
- 11 Under this ....., only full members of the club are entitled to vote.  
 a role b root c ruler d rule
- 12 A ..... is the position that someone has in a situation or activity.  
 a role b root c ruler d rule
- 13 He compared our world ..... a stage.  
 a for b with c of d to



cause

يسبب

cause of + اسم

سبب

cause + مفعول + to

يسبب / يجعل

cause + شيء + for

يسبب

reason for + n /ing

سبب لـ

reason why

سبب لـ

reason with

يحاول إقناع / يتجادل مع

► What **caused** the fire?

► What was the **cause** of the fire?

► What **caused** you **to** change your mind?

► Poor weather **causes** problems **for** many farmers.

► I don't know the **reason for** coming late.

► I don't know the **reason why** he came late.

► I **reasoned with** him, but I couldn't make him change his mind.

14 I tried to reason ..... him, but he didn't listen.

a of

b for

c to

d with

15 Give me one good ..... why I should help you.

a promise

b cause

c purpose

d reason

16 He wouldn't give the reasons ..... his decision.

a of

b for

c why

d from

17 Investigators are still trying to determine the ..... of the accident.

a reason

b result

c reasonable

d cause

18 I don't really think he had any ..... to complain.

a reason

b cause

c season

d pause

19 Unemployment is a major ..... of poverty.

a promise

b cause

c purpose

d reason

20 You can add another reason ..... the pollution problem which is illiteracy.

a of

b for

c to

d with

One of the

اسم جمع

فعل مفرد

One of the **players** was injured in the last match.

21 One of the ..... naughty so the teacher punished him.

a students was

b student was

c students were

d students is

22 Listen! One of the ..... you.

a man calls

b man is calling

c men are calling

d men is calling

صفة آخرها ed

يصف الذي يشعر الشعور

صفة آخرها ing

يصف السبب للشعور

I feel **confused** during the exams.

This situation is **confusing**.

23 She was ..... that the plane would crash.

a frightened

b frighten

c fright

d frightening

24 He exerts great efforts. They all think his work is .....

a amaze

b amazed

c amazing

d amazingly

25 It was a / an ..... experience.

a excited

b terrified

c confused

d terrifying

26 The questions were ..... because my teacher used mysterious words.

a confuses

b confusing

c confused

d confusion

27 I was so ..... that I slept through the second half of the film.

a bored

b excited

c boring

d exciting





## Make - Do

### make

(makes - making - made)

a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح
a difference	يحدث اختلاف
a decision	يتخذ قرار
a mistake	يخطئ
money	يكون ثروة

friends	يكون أصدقاء
noise	يحدث ضوضاء
a promise	يوعد
a plan	يخطط
arrangements	يقوم بترتيبات

### do

(does - doing - did - done)

an operation	يجري عملية جراحية
work	يقوم بعمل
a job	يؤتي وظيفة
a survey	يجري استطلاع
a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع

well	يؤدي جيداً
his best	يذل قصارى جهده
damage	يسبب تلف
repairs	يقوم باصلاحات
a favour	يقدم خدمة

1. I am sure my brother ..... well in yesterday's test.  
a done b gave c did d made
2. He ..... a lot of important work in his life.  
a make b makes c do d does
3. My brother has a very difficult decision to ..... next week.  
a make b made c do d did
4. The state of Florida was hit by a hurricane that ..... serious damage.  
a made b took c gave d did
5. Teachers show students how to ..... research online.  
a do b make c sit d let
6. The patient's fear ..... the operation hard.  
a make b made c do d did
7. Mai as well as her sisters ..... a promise to help their mother at home.  
a has done b have done c have made d has made

## destination, location, site & position

destination	مكان الوصول (الوجهة)	Aswan will be my next <b>destination</b> .
location	موقع / موقع تصوير	What is the exact <b>location</b> of the ship?
site	موقع أثري / بناء / موقع على الانترنت	Abu Simble is the <b>site</b> of two temples in Aswan.
position	موقع متحرك / مكانة اجتماعية	Ahmed had a high <b>position</b> in society.

1. The hotel stands in an elevated ..... looking out over the lake.  
a destination b location c site d position
2. The company is moving to a new ..... in Cairo.  
a destination b location c site d position
3. Egypt has some of the best dive ..... in the Mediterranean.  
a destination b location c site d positions
4. The restaurants are located in capital cities and major tourist .....  
a destinations b location c site d positions
5. Can you hold this nail in ..... while I hammer it into the door?  
a destination b position c site d location



## linking words

because = as = since  
because of = due to  
so = consequently  
although = though  
despite = in spite of  
but - whilst - however

بسبب (بعدهم جملة سبب)  
بسبب (بعدهم اسم أو ing)  
لذا (بعدهم جملة نتيجة)  
بالرغم من (بعدهم جملة)  
بالرغم من (بعدهم اسم أو ing)  
لكن / (بعدهم جملة)

- ▶ I didn't come **because** I was ill.
- ▶ I didn't come **because of** being ill (my illness).
- ▶ I was ill **consequently** I didn't come .
- ▶ **Although** I was ill, I went to school.
- ▶ **Despite** being ill, I went to school.
- ▶ I was ill **whilst** I went to school.

- 40 ..... he is 70, he is energetic.  
 (a) **Because** (b) **Despite** (c) **Although** (d) **In spite**
- 41 It was raining ..... we didn't go out.  
 (a) **because** (b) **because of** (c) **so** (d) **although**
- 42 We didn't enjoy the day ..... the weather was cold.  
 (a) **because** (b) **because of** (c) **so** (d) **although**
- 43 We didn't enjoy the day ..... the cold weather.  
 (a) **because** (b) **because of** (c) **so** (d) **despite**
- 44 He isn't happy ..... being rich.  
 (a) **because** (b) **because of** (c) **although** (d) **in spite of**
- 45 He is rich ..... he isn't happy.  
 (a) **but** (b) **because** (c) **although** (d) **in spite of**

## experience

خبرة  
تجربة في الحياة  
يمر بتجربة

- ▶ My brother doesn't have much **experience** for the job.
- ▶ Travelling abroad is an amazing **experience**.
- ▶ I need to meet new people to **experience** a new life.

- 46 I have ..... many different and interesting situations in my work.  
 (a) **experienced** (b) **experience** (c) **experiences** (d) **an experience**
- 47 My grandfather is wise. He has different ..... in life.  
 (a) **exercise** (b) **experiments** (c) **experiences** (d) **experience**
- 48 I did meet him once and it was ..... I shall never forget.  
 (a) **experienced** (b) **an experience** (c) **experience** (d) **experiences**

## argue (for - with - about - against)

for  
with  
about  
against

- ▶ She **argued for** a more positive role for women
- ▶ He **argued with** the referee throughout the game
- ▶ They were **arguing about** how to spend the money
- ▶ He **argues** persuasively **against** nationalism.

- 49 My kids spend more time arguing ..... me to play the games.  
 (a) **with** (b) **on** (c) **for** (d) **over**
- 50 They argued ..... the right to strike.  
 (a) **with** (b) **to** (c) **for** (d) **that**
- 51 My friend always argues ..... money with her husband.  
 (a) **with** (b) **that** (c) **for** (d) **about**



## complain (to + about)

complain

to + شخص

of + مرض

about + شيء

that + جملة

يشكول

Toka complained to her father about her

يشكومن

She complained of a severe headache.

يشكومن

He complained about his study.

يشكومن

He complained that he didn't study well.

- 62 It was entirely my own idea, so I can hardly .....  
 (a) compactent (b) complainant (c) complaint (d) complain
- 63 She complained bitterly ..... the lack of help she received.  
 (a) about (b) of (c) that (d) to
- 64 I'm going to complain ..... the manager about this.  
 (a) about (b) of (c) that (d) to
- 65 She left early, complaining ..... a headache.  
 (a) about (b) of (c) that (d) to

## arrive, reach &amp; get to

arrive (in)

arrive (at)

reach + object

get to

يصل مكان كبير

He arrived in Cairo.

يصل مكان صغير

He arrived at the office early.

يصل (بدون حرف جر) + مفعول

He reached Cairo airport.

يصل الى (بصعوبة)

They got to Cairo airport.

- 66 Egypt ..... the final of the Africa Cup of Nations in 2017.  
 (a) got (b) reached (c) touched (d) amounted
- 67 We finally ..... at our destination late that evening.  
 (a) came (b) reached (c) got (d) arrived
- 68 The Corona Virus victim is in danger as the temperature of his body had .....  
 (a) risen (b) got (c) reached (d) arrived
- 69 The pressure of work is beginning to ..... to him.  
 (a) come (b) reach (c) get (d) arrive
- 70 We ..... in Cairo later that day.  
 (a) got (b) reached (c) touched (d) arrived

Don't get confused

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

- 71 "She felt curiously unreal, as if she were in the midst of a dream." The adjective in this sentence is antonymous with .....  
 (a) factual (b) fiction (c) fictional (d) imaginary
- 72 ..... is the synonym of "serious".  
 (a) Lovely (b) Friendly (c) Tough (d) Easy
- 73 ..... is the antonym of objectivity.  
 (a) Equality (b) Bias (c) Fairness (d) Justice
- 74 She cheated in the test by copying from the boy in front. Cheated is a synonym of .....  
 (a) solved (b) tricked (c) supported (d) promoted
- 75 "Nothing can make up for losing your father." What does 'make up for' mean?  
 (a) compensate (b) encourage (c) cheat (d) cooperate
- 76 "Many of the fans believe that the omission of the team cost us the match." word 'omission' here can be replaced by .....  
 (a) calmness (b) carelessness (c) success (d) carefulness



- 66 It was a very cold day in winter. I didn't have a coat and it was .....  
 a **terrifying**      b **chillier**      c **freezing**      d **petrified**
- 67 The news story about the match missed out the injured player so there was bias by.....  
 a **omission**      b **mislead**      c **spin**      d **inaccurate**
- 68 In his advertisement, he left out the fact that the flat isn't opposite the Nile to make others buy it for a higher price. This is bias by .....  
 a **spin**      b **placement**      c **omission**      d **replacement**
- 69 They ..... the death of their mother in the local paper.  
 a **announced**      b **replaced**      c **complained**      d **accused**
- 70 He has admitted ..... the police about his movements on the night of the murder.  
 a **announcing**      b **replaced**      c **impacting**      d **misleading**
- 71 Anyone ..... in joining the club should contact us at the address below.  
 a **interested**      b **is interested**      c **are interested**      d **interest**
- 72 So far, only one ..... has been rescued from the scene of the explosion.  
 a **emergency**      b **casualty**      c **casual**      d **murder**
- 73 Victims of the crash will be ..... for their injuries.  
 a **compensated**      b **punished**      c **pirated**      d **cheated**
- 74 For a teacher to hit a child is not just morally wrong but also .....  
 a **allowed**      b **lawful**      c **legal**      d **illegal**
- 75 Her injury ..... her chances of winning the race.  
 a **compensated**      b **punished**      c **ruined**      d **occurred**
- 76 We are of course investigating how an error like this could have .....  
 a **compensated**      b **punished**      c **ruined**      d **occurred**
- 77 She was ..... of murdering her drunken husband.  
 a **convicted**      b **supported**      c **admitted**      d **compensated**
- 78 Such behaviour ..... all the rules of a civilized society.  
 a **announces**      b **punishes**      c **violates**      d **demand**
- 79 The jury has to decide whether a person is guilty or innocent of a .....  
 a **cream**      b **crime**      c **criminal**      d **commit**
- 80 We think that the person who won the quiz is a..... . He looked up the answers online, which was not allowed.  
 a **chat**      b **bias**      c **cheat**      d **spin**
- 81 People who leak books and join in ..... are punished for their crime.  
 a **piracy**      b **pirates**      c **cheat**      d **chat**
- 82 In the last email from my cousin in India, he ..... that some of India's roads are the most dangerous in the world!  
 a **spun**      b **demand**      c **cheated**      d **claimed**
- 83 Tarek often won running races at school, but we all knew he was a..... . He did not follow the correct route and did not run as far as other students.  
 a **incident**      b **bias**      c **cheat**      d **pirate**
- 84 People were ..... while the firefighters helped the family from the fire. Thankfully, everyone was saved.  
 a **waiting without bated breathe**      b **waiting with bated breath**  
 c **pirating digital copy**      d **long-awaited ending**



- GIANTS**
- 86 The family picnic was ..... when there was a sandstorm and everything was ruined.   
 (a) demanded (b) ruined (c) cheated (d) claimed
- 87 The police have closed the train station because there has been a / an .....   
 (a) spin (b) bias (c) cheat (d) incident
- 88 Workers at the factory ..... better pay and shorter working hours.   
 (a) spun (b) demanded (c) cheated (d) claimed
- 89 Downloading music from some websites on the internet without paying is an example of ..... and people should not do it.   
 (a) pirate (b) bias (c) piracy (d) incident
- 90 I was ..... to read that 52% of people in the world are under 30 years old.   
 (a) shock (b) shocked (c) checked (d) exciting
- 91 The story is a ..... account of events in early aviation.   
 (a) factually (b) factual (c) fact (d) fiction
- 92 Good food can make a significant ..... to people's health.   
 (a) differ (b) different (c) differently (d) difference
- 93 Social media has a negative ..... on news and society.   
 (a) influential (b) effective (c) affect (d) impact
- 94 Social media has become the ..... source of news.   
 (a) main (b) mean (c) means (d) a means
- 95 I didn't like that film. It was ..... !   
 (a) terrifying (b) petrified (c) bored (d) frightened
- 96 The accident was not caused by any act or ..... of the gas company.   
 (a) mansion (b) emotion (c) mission (d) omission
- 97 The movie is historically ....., but well worth seeing.   
 (a) inaccurately (b) inaccurate (c) accurate (d) accurately
- 98 It's difficult for any of us to look at a situation without some form of cultural .....   
 (a) path (b) bass (c) bias (d) base
- 99 Don't fall into the .... of thinking you can learn a foreign language without doing any .....   
 (a) trap (b) tape (c) trip (d) tribe
- 100 In the UK it is illegal to drive ..... holding a mobile phone.   
 (a) during (b) when (c) as (d) whilst
- 101 I think we can find a ..... for you in the accounts department.   
 (a) palace (b) replace (c) placement (d) site
- 102 I just had time to scan the ..... before leaving for work.   
 (a) deadlines (b) headlines (c) online (d) headache
- 103 The programme presented a ..... view of the two sides of the conflict.   
 (a) frightened (b) balance (c) balanced (d) bored
- 104 Outside the village we turned into a leafy ..... leading to a farm.   
 (a) lane (b) line (c) loan (d) lean
- 105 The ..... turned over all evidence to the court.   
 (a) editors (b) headlines (c) omissions (d) investigator
- 106 Janet's been under a lot of ..... since her mother's illness.   
 (a) stressfully (b) stress (c) stressed (d) stressful
- 107 He's taken some ..... photos of her.   
 (a) interesting (b) interest (c) excited (d) interested
- 108 He gets really upset if you ..... his baldness.   
 (a) say (b) ask (c) mention (d) tell



التصريف التالي للفعل بإضافة (d / ed / led) أو حفظ الأفعال الغير منتظمة.

Past Simple  
الماضي البسيط

Affirmation  
الإثبات

- I **played** football yesterday.
- Rana **watched** the film at home.
- Aya **went** to the cinema.

Negative  
النفي

فعل + didn't + inf.  
فعل + never + التصريف الثاني

- I **didn't play** (never played) football yesterday.
- Aya **didn't watch** (never watched) the film at home.

Question  
السؤال

Did + فعل + inf...?

- Did you **play** football yesterday?  
✓ Yes, I **did**.  
✗ No, I **didn't**.

Passive  
المبني للمجهول

مفعول + was / were + P.P.

- Football **was played** yesterday.
- The film **was watched** at home by Jana.

Key words  
كلمات

yesterday	أمس
ago	منذ
last	السابق
in.....	في (عام سابق)
once/ one day	مرة
How long ago	متى
used to	اعتاد أن

- I **sent** an e-mail to my friend yesterday.
- This house **was built** three years ago.
- Self **wrote** his first novel last year.
- Ahmed **was born** in 1986.
- Once, I **had** a terrible accident.
- How long ago **did** you **start** studying English?
- When I **was** young, I **used to get up** early.

Uses  
الاستخدامات

١ يعبر عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

- He **visited** his uncle yesterday.
- He **had** his lunch and **went** out.

٢ يستخدم لوصف أحداث تتبع بعضها في الماضي.

- He **did** his homework then **slept**.

(first, - then, - next, - at last, - finally, ) يستخدم في سرد أحداث قصة حدثت في الماضي

- Once, I **found** a wallet, then I **went** to the police.

٣ في الحالة التالية (if).

- If she **studied** hard, she **would succeed**.



usually / always / sometimes / often / never / every .....  
 He **drove** into town **every** day last week. He **always** got up late last year.  
 يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية مثل (after / before) بشرط أن يكون الزمن الآخر ماضي.

- After he had studied, he **slept**.
- Mai had had dinner before she **watched** TV.
- Mona **didn't come** until Toka had invited her.
- No sooner had I finished, than I **watched** TV.

يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي.

- I wish Toka **studied** well.
- It's time she **studied** English.
- I would rather she **studied** well.

1) I wish

2) It's time

3) I would rather

فاعل

مفعول به

## used to

يستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن عادة أو موقف في الماضي ولا يحدث الآن.

- Mai **used to** get up early. This means .....  
 = Mai **no longer gets** up early.  
 = Mai **doesn't get** up early anymore.  
 = It **was** Mai's habit to **get** up early.  
 = Mai **always got** up early but now she **doesn't**.

يستخدم **be (get) used to** للتعبير عن عادة أو موقف في المضارع.

- Mai **is used to** getting up late.  
 = Mai **gets used to** getting up late.  
 = **Nowadays**, Mai **gets up** late but in the past she **didn't**.

لفظ الفرق بين:

used to

inf.

تعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن

(am - is - are - get - gets) used to

V

ing

تعبير عن عادة تحدث في الحاضر

استخدام

استخدام

I **used to** play football when I was young, but now I **don't**.

I'm **used to** playing football.

نقطة التعقيب بعد **but now** تكون مضارع و عكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم **do - does** إذا كان الجملة ليس **V. be** أما إذا كان **V. be** نستخدم **am - is - are** :

- She **used to** get up early, but now she **doesn't**.
- I **used to** play football when I was young, but now I **don't**.
- She **used to be** active, but now she **isn't**.

نقطة للاحظ أن **used to** (is - are) قد تأتي بمعنى (يستخدم لكي) ويليه **inf.** :

- The wind **is used to** sail ships.
- Cotton **is used to** make clothes.

In 2020, I

@ built

Once, We

@ having

My father a

@ has gone

The actor

@ didn't wa

When I first

@ write

Ali always

@ walks

Yesterday,

@ had met

I'd rather y

@ don't par

..... di

@ How long

He

@ lived

One of our

@ have bee

"Did you go

@ didn't invi

When I work

@ had got

They

@ aren't

I'd rather Na

@ is meeting

Are you goin

@ told

Maged's gra

@ seemed

My mum usu

@ tells

I wish you

@ had wasted

He

@ didn't rewa

When he was

@ took

Have you see

@ saw



# **Exercises on Structure**

- 1 In 2020, I ..... a new house in my village.  
 (a) **built** (b) have built (c) will build (d) had built
- 2 Once, We ..... lunch in this restaurant.  
 (a) **having** (b) have (c) has (d) had
- 3 My father alwaMedia biasys ..... to work by train when he was young.  
 (a) **has gone** (b) was going (c) went (d) is going
- 4 The actor ..... to answer any questions!  
 (a) **didn't want** (b) never want (c) don't want (d) wanted
- 5 When I first ..... news stories, I often included my own feelings and opinions.  
 (a) **write** (b) wrote (c) written (d) writes
- 6 Ali always ..... to work when he was young.  
 (a) **walks** (b) had walked (c) walked (d) was walking
- 7 Yesterday, I went to the club and ..... my friends.  
 (a) **had met** (b) met (c) meet (d) was meeting
- 8 I'd rather you ..... your car here.  
 (a) **don't park** (b) didn't park (c) haven't parked (d) hasn't parked
- 9 ..... did you study English?  
 (a) **How long** (b) How long ago (c) Since when (d) Since
- 10 He ..... in Alex for ten years. Now he lives in Beni Suef.  
 (a) **lived** (b) has lived (c) will have lived (d) had lived
- 11 One of our classroom windows ..... yesterday.  
 (a) **have been broken** (b) has broken (c) has been broken (d) was broken
- 12 "Did you go to the party?" - No, I .....  
 (a) **didn't invite** (b) hadn't invited (c) wasn't invited (d) invited
- 13 When I worked as a postman, I ..... up at 3 o'clock every morning.  
 (a) **had got** (b) was getting (c) got (d) get
- 14 They ..... able to come because they were so busy.  
 (a) **aren't** (b) didn't (c) wasn't (d) weren't
- 15 I'd rather Nada ..... her mother at the club.  
 (a) **is meeting** (b) meets (c) met (d) has met
- 16 Are you going to tell Toka what happened, or would you rather I ..... her?  
 (a) **told** (b) tell (c) tells (d) had told
- 17 Maged's grandmother ..... ill when he visited her yesterday.  
 (a) **seemed** (b) was seeming (c) has seemed (d) had seemed
- 18 My mum usually ..... me stories before sleep when I was young.  
 (a) **tells** (b) told (c) is telling (d) has told
- 19 I wish you ..... your time.  
 (a) **had wasted** (b) wasted (c) didn't waste (d) haven't wasted
- 20 He ..... until he had cleaned the car well.  
 (a) **didn't rewarded** (b) doesn't rewarded (c) rewarded (d) wasn't rewarded
- 21 When he was young, he ..... to hospital as a result of an accident.  
 (a) **took** (b) had taken (c) was taken (d) was taken
- 22 Have you seen Ola? - Yes, I ..... her an hour ago.  
 (a) **saw** (b) have seen (c) see (d) will see



**d returned**

**d Are you**

**d would sunbathe**

**d has**

**d had been**

**d has arrested**

**d worked**

**تعاريف موقع لوجيان وبنك المرفى**

**d had you started**

**d established**

**d was built**

**d had born**

**d was discovered**

**d had visited**

**d had lived**

**d are going**

**d are going**

**d works**

**d while**

**d will visit**

**d is going**

**d were**

**d had been**

**d return**

**d Were you**

**d was sunbathing**

**d is**

**d was**

**d arrested**

**d work**

**d were you**

**d established**

**d was established**

**d was building**

**d was born**

**d was discovered**

**d visited**

**d live**

**d went**

**d went**

**d worked**

**d when**

**d visit**

**d was going**

**d didn't**

**d have been**

**used to - be used to**

**d am used to**

**d am used to**

**d was used**

**d isn't**

**d don't**

**d use to do**

**d am used to reading**

**d am used**

**d is used**

**d used to walk**

**d used**

**d get used to make**

**d am used to going**

**d I don't get up late now.**

**d I no longer get up early.**

**d is used to liking**

**d eating**

**d used to**

**d isn't used to being**

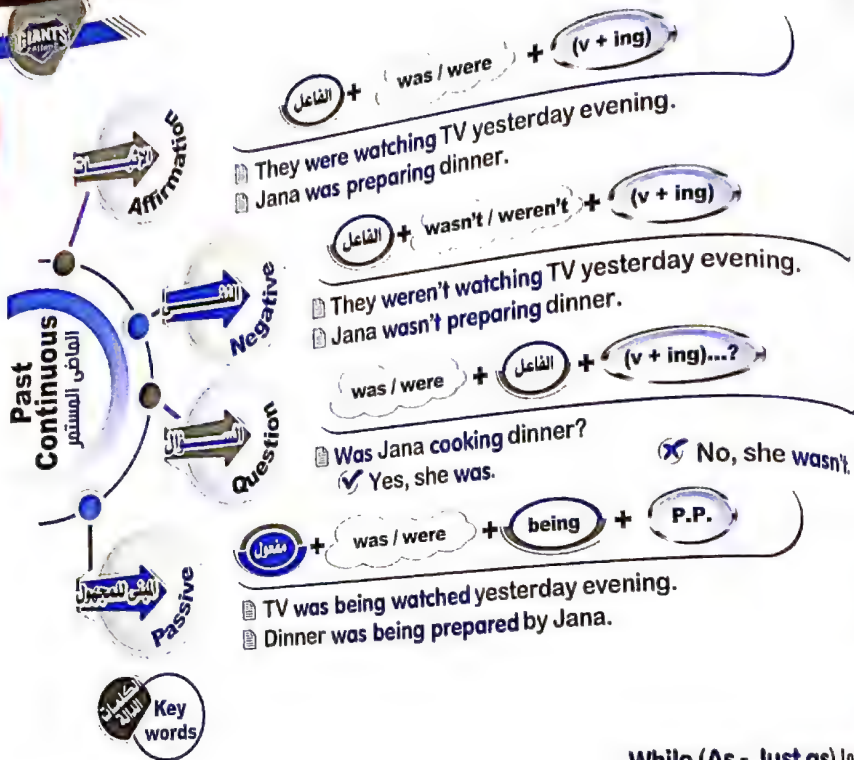
**d was used**

**d I'll stop it**

**d she is no longer lazy**

**d is using to**





بينما (While - As - Just as)

- While he was leaving, the phone rang.
- While playing football, I fell. (V + ing) في حالة عدم وجود فاعل
- While I was at the club, I met my old friends. (while يأتي ماضي بسيط بعد while)
- As I was watching TV, my father came.

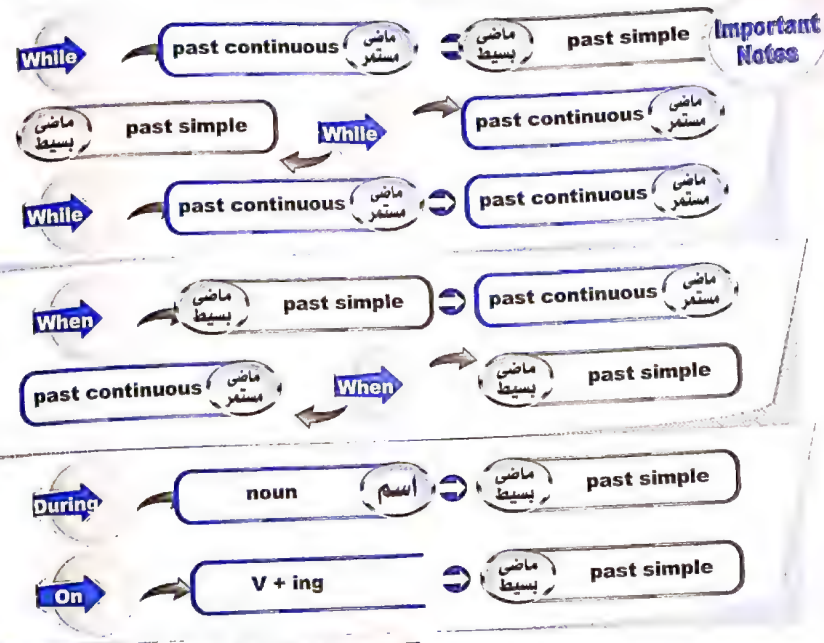
When	عندما
During	خلال / أثناء (بعدها اسم)
On	عندما بعدها (v+ing)
yesterday	أمس (مدة زمنية)

- When the phone rang, he was leaving.
- During the party, I received many presents.
- On seeing the accident, I called the police.
- Jana was studying at seven yesterday.

### Uses

الاستخدامات

- التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي.  
He was playing all morning yesterday.
- التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما وقع حدث آخر.  
While I was having lunch, the phone rang.
- التعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي.  
While she was preparing dinner, he was watching TV.



### Important Notes

- الفرق بين While / on / during: while يستخدم بعد ماضي مستمر والجملتان الثانية ماضي بسيط ويمكن أن يأتي بعدها حرف جر: حدث قطع آخر
- While I was watching TV, the light went out.
- While in my room, I fell asleep.
- يمكن أن يكون الحدين مع while - when في الماضي المستمر: حدثان مستمران
- While Jana was watching TV, Toka was studying English.
- When I was first interviewing people, I was asking too many questions.
- إذا لم يأتي بعد while فاعل يأتي بعدها (V+ing) بشرط أن يكون فاعل الجمليتين واحداً إلا في بعض الحالات
- While going home, it rained.
- يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بعد while إذا كان الفعل الأساسي verb to be
- While I was at street, I fell off my bike.
- يمكن استخدام On بدلاً من when ويأتي بعدها V + ing
- On arriving, he found the light on.
- يمكن استخدام during بدلاً من while ويأتي بعدها Noun
- During the game, he got hurt.
- لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر والماضي التام المستمر:
- I was doing my homework all day yesterday.
- I had been doing my homework all day yesterday before I slept.
- يمكن استخدام because - as - since في الماضي المستمر:
- I couldn't answer the phone because I was having a shower.



- 1 I ..... a well-known actor when he told me to be quiet.  
 a had interviewed b interviewed c was interviewing d were interviewing
- 2 I was working as a volunteer at a shop when I ..... at university.  
 a was b had c was being d have been
- 3 What ..... at midday last Saturday?  
 a had you done b have you done c did you do d were you doing
- 4 While I was studying, my father ..... a book.  
 a reads b was reading c were reading d read
- 5 From 7 to 9 yesterday, I ..... a certain task as I was asked.  
 a did b had done c was doing d have done
- 6 While the party ....., we were busy sending invitations to our friends.  
 a was prepared b was being prepared c is prepared d have done
- 7 What ..... yesterday while the match was being broadcasted?  
 a were you done b were you doing c are you doing d you were doing
- 8 While my car ..... at the garage, I was having a meal at a nearby restaurant.  
 a was repairing b was being repaired c had repaired d repaired
- 9 While he was playing football, he ..... and broke his leg.  
 a fell b was falling c fall d falling
- 10 As I ..... home last night, it started raining.  
 a has walked b had walked c was walking d walked
- 11 While I ..... ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin.  
 a was b was being c am d had been
- 12 When the phone rang, I ..... my lunch.  
 a had b am having c was having d will have
- 13 While I ..... at school, suddenly an earthquake took place.  
 a was b were c being d was being
- 14 My brother ..... a tree when he fell and broke his leg.  
 a climbed b has climbed c climbing d was climbing
- 15 While ..... my house, it rained.  
 a painted b was painting c painting d was being painted
- 16 Adam ..... chess all day yesterday.  
 a played b was playing c is playing d had played
- 17 I as well as my friends ..... much yesterday morning.  
 a chatted b was chatting c were chatting d had chatted
- 18 Mona borrowed her friend's car while hers .....  
 a was repairing b was repaired c was being repaired d repaired
- 19 While I ..... in Banha, I met an old friend of mine.  
 a was b had been c was being d being
- 20 While ..... a cold drink, my car was being checked.  
 a having b was having c was had d I was having
- 21 It was not polite of him to interrupt what I .....  
 a was saying b am saying c will say d says
- 22 They didn't answer the ringing phone since they ..... deeply.  
 a sleep b were sleeping c are sleeping d has slept

- 23 I couldn't watch the film as my brother ..... a football match.  
 a was watching b had watched c has watched d watched
- 24 I saw a lot of tourists while ..... in Luxor.  
 a being b was being c was d had been
- 25 The moment I saw her, she ..... the washing up. Later, she ironed her skirts.  
 a did b was doing c has done d is doing
- 26 Just as I ..... home, I saw an accident.  
 a are walking b walks c walking d was walking
- 27 At the time my father arrived, we ..... chess.  
 a were played b are playing c were playing d played
- 28 He couldn't answer the phone because he ..... a shower.  
 a was having b has had c had d had had
- 29 While I was studying English and ..... to music, my mother was cooking.  
 a listened b was listening c were listening d listening
- 30 While I was cooking, my husband was washing the car. This means .....  
 a I cooked first b the two actions were in the same time  
 c the two actions were in different times d my husband washed the car first
- 31 "What ..... between 9 and 12 yesterday morning?" said the detective.  
 a you had done b had you done c were you doing d you were doing
- 32 This time last year I ..... in Brazil.  
 a was living b had lived c lived d had lived
- 33 At 5 o'clock last Monday, I ..... on a bus on my way home.  
 a was b were c had been d was being

Don't get confused

while - on - when - during - because - as - since

- 34 I felt really sick ..... the party, so I went home.  
 a when b during c while d on
- 35 I couldn't do the shopping ..... all shops had been closed.  
 a until b since c before d after
- 36 ..... working hours, I felt active.  
 a After b While c During d On
- 37 ..... in the office, he received a call from his wife.  
 a During b On c While d After
- 38 He made some new friends ..... his stay in Cairo.  
 a while b when c until d during
- 39 ..... doing our homework, we handed it out to our teacher.  
 a On being b On c Having been d Having
- 40 ..... done, our homework was handed out to our teacher.  
 a On being b On c Have been d Having
- 41 ..... the police arrested the thief, he was taken to prison.  
 a On being b On c When d Having
- 42 ..... arrested, the thief was taken to prison.  
 a During b On c When d Having
- 43 ..... my walk to the club, I met my old friend.  
 a During b On c When d Having
- 44 ..... the film, Mahmoud fell asleep because it was a boring one.  
 a While b When c On d During



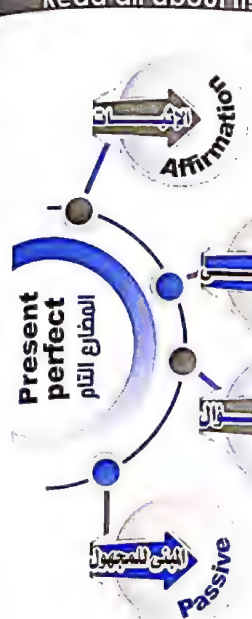
- with my friends, I am over the moon.  
 ٤٤ There are always economic crises ..... wars.  
 ٤٥ ..... visiting hours, we got an entrance ticket for the hospital to see my uncle.  
 ٤٦ I met a lot of my old friends ..... my cousin's wedding party.  
 ٤٧ I couldn't answer the phone ..... I was having a shower.  
 ٤٨ ..... the flight, I was reading a book called "To Whom the Bells Toll."  
 ٤٩ ..... While

Don't get confused

تمارين موقع لولجمان و بنك المعرفة

- ٤٤ While we ..... TV, my cousin suddenly arrived.  
 ٤٥ I enjoyed seeing the view of the Nile while the plane .....  
 ٤٦ Just as I ..... to school, I saw a policeman helping an old woman cross the street.  
 ٤٧ Mai ..... into the forest yesterday morning.  
 ٤٨ We were doing our homework while our little brother ..... TV.  
 ٤٩ When I went to the workshop, the mechanic ..... my car, so I had to wait.  
 ٥٠ While ..... dinner, a stranger knocked on the door of my flat by mistake.  
 ٥١ What ..... when your father returned home last night?  
 ٥٢ When I returned home, my mother ..... lunch. So, I had to help her.  
 ٥٣ I returned home when mother was preparing lunch. "When" here means .....  
 ٥٤ I didn't answer the phone because I .....  
 ٥٥ "What ..... at the time of the murder?" The magistrate asked.  
 ٥٦ As they ..... to the tour guide, someone ..... their money.

أحرص على اقتناء أقوى كتب المراجعات للثانوية العامة



الفاعل + have / has + P.P.

- They **have watched** TV.  
 Jana **has cooked** dinner.

الفاعل + haven't / hasn't + P.P.

- They **haven't watched** TV.  
 Jana **hasn't cooked** dinner.

have / has + الفاعل + P.P...?

- Has Jana **cooked** dinner?  
 Yes, she **has**. No, she **hasn't**.

مفعول + have / has + been + P.P.

- TV **has been watched** by them.  
 Dinner **has been cooked** by Jana.

Key words  
الكلمات

just	توياً
already	سبق أن (آخر الجملة أو السؤال أو بين (have - has + P.P)
ever	تستخدم في (سؤال - نفي - تفضيل)
never	أبداً
yet	حتى الآن / ليس بعد (نفي أو سؤال)
lately	مؤخراً
recently	حالياً / مؤخراً
so far	حتى الآن
up till now	
since	منذ
for	لمدة
How long	كم المدة
still	مازال
... before.	من قبل
This year / month / week ...	
Today / Tonight...	
over the years...	
In recent years...	
In the last years...	
It is the first / second	

- He **has just read** the novel.  
 I **have already visited** Luxor.  
 I **have visited** Luxor **already**.  
 Has Jana **ever travelled** abroad?  
 Jana **hasn't ever finished** her homework.  
 No student **has ever come** today.  
 "Days" is the best novel I **have ever read**.  
 Seif **has never eaten** pizza.  
 Has he **finished** his study **yet**?  
 I **haven't finished** my study **yet**.  
 They **haven't studied** English **lately**.  
 Jana **has finished** her homework **recently**.  
 She **has cooked** the meal **so far**.  
 They **have lived** here **up till now**.  
 He **has travelled** **since** 2010.  
 She **has studied** **for** five hours.  
 How long **have you worked** there?  
 She **still hasn't said** sorry to me.  
 I **haven't seen** her **before**.  
 She **has worked** hard **this year**.  
 He **has done** his homework **today**.  
 Over the years, we **have studied** English.  
 In recent years, they **have made** money.  
 In the last years, I **have gained** much weight.  
 It is the first time I **have ever seen** this film.





**Uses**  
الاستخدامات

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال اثره موجود.

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن انتهاء حدث في وقت قريب.

يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرة فرد أو التحدث عن خبرة سابقة.

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال اثره موجود.

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن انتهاء حدث في وقت قريب.

يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرة فرد أو التحدث عن خبرة سابقة.

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وما زال اثره موجود.

## Important Notes

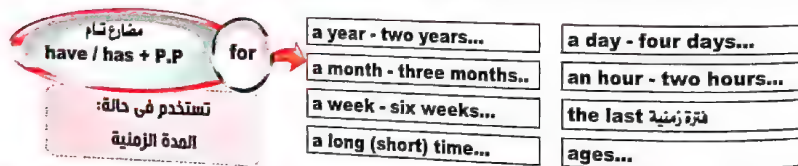
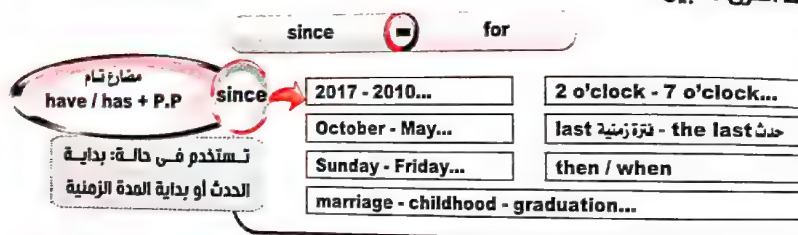


Have you **ever** tried to write your name and address with your left hand? **I've already** booked my flight home.  
She's **never** said sorry for what she did.

لاحظ مواقع **ever**: تستخدم في حالة (النفي / السؤال / التفضيل / مع كلمة لا)

Have you **ever** visited Paris?  
My mum is the best cook **ever**.  
No one has **ever** spoken to me like that before.  
It is the first time I have **ever** seen Ali.  
He is the greatest person I have **ever** met.

**لاحظ الفرق ما بين:**



Mr Ahmed **has lived** here for ten years.  
She **has been** ill since the **last** meeting.  
Jana **has travelled** for the last week.  
**I have** lived here since my **childhood**.  
She **has studied** French since last year.  
She **has studied** French since 2017.

يمكن استخدام since كأداة ربط



④ I have played this game since I was five.  
 ④ She has studied English since she started her school.  
 ④ It is a year since I met Adham.  
 ④ It is a year since meeting Adham.

كلمات تدل على المضارع التام وتأتي في نهاية الجملة أو السؤال.




 Toka **hasn't** registered for class **yet**.  
 **Has** she **emailed** you **yet**?
  I **have finished** my breakfast **already**.  
 I **have studied** French **recently**.

## Important Notes

**already / yet**

نستخدم **already** في نهاية السؤال إذا كان المعنى "دهشة" أو الرد علي السؤال ايجابي

 Have you done your homework **already**?  
- That's too fast. (yet x)


نستخدم **yet** في نهاية السؤال إذا كان الرد على السؤال سلبي

Have you done your homework **yet**?  
- You are too slow. (already x)

**have gone to / have been to**  
**/ have been in**

 I **have been to** Alex.  
= I **visited** Alex and **came back**.


ذهبت وعدت،

 I have gone to Alex.  
= I visited Alex and stayed there.

ذهبت وما زلت هناك لم ارجع

 I have been in Alex for 10 years. متواجد و يعيش في الإسكندرية منذ ١٠ سنوات

**How long /  
How long ago**

 (How long - **How long ago**) did you study English? ماضي بسيط  
 (**How long** - How long ago) have you been studying English? مضارع تام

**(How long - How long ago)** have you been studying English? المضارع تام

**لاحظ الفرق بين**



- The last time I met Mai was ten years ago.  
= The last time I met Mai was in 2011.  
= I haven't met Mai for ten years.  
= I haven't met Mai since 2011.

لاحظ استخدام  
في الأزمنة المختلفة

- He has lived in Alex for ten years.  
He has been living in Alex for ten years now.  
He lived in Alex for ten years. Now he lives in Beni Suef.  
Next year, he will have lived in Alex for ten years.  
He had been living in Alex for ten years before he moved to Cairo.

مضارع تام  
مضارع تام مستمر  
ماضي بسيط  
مستقبل تام

لاحظ استخدام since مع  
المضارع التام والماضي التام

- I haven't met Mai since I called you.  
I saw Mai. I hadn't met her since I called you.  
I couldn't know who asked about me since I had lost my mobile.

مضارع تام  
ماضي تام  
ماضي تام

المضارع التام أو الماضي البسيط  
مع الروابط الزمنية

after / before / when / as soon as + مضارع بسيط أو تام + مصدر will

- I'll go to bed after I do (have done) my homework.  
As soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London, she will call me.

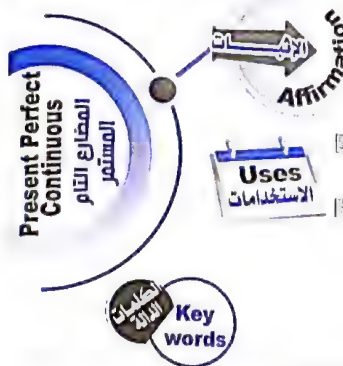
won't + مضارع بسيط أو تام until + مصدر or didn't + ماضي تام until + مصدر

- He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.  
He didn't come until I had phoned him.

لاحظ الفرق في  
المعنى بين الجمل التالية

- I have worked for that company for 10 years.  
I worked for that company for 10 years.  
Ali has just arrived.  
Ali arrived just now.  
I have never studied French.  
I haven't studied French yet.

(لازمت العمل بالشركة)  
(استقلت منها)  
كلمة just خاصة بالمضارع التام  
just now = a moment ago  
لم ادرس اللغة الفرنسية ابدا  
لم اذكر اللغة الفرنسية حتى الآن



الفاعل + have / has been + V-ing

- I have been studying English all day.  
I feel bored as I have been waiting him for more than six hours.

يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومستمر في الحاضر.  
يعبر عن نتيجة موقف في الحاضر.

مع كل كلمات المضارع التام بالإضافة إلي:  
all (morning / day / night / week / month year...)  
- for ... now / for ... not yet / How long ...

- I have been working hard all day.  
She has been doing her homework for 3 hours and she hasn't finished yet.  
How long have you been learning English? - For 10 years.

لاحظ: استخدام المضارع التام فقط وعدم استخدام المضارع التام المستمر في الحالات التالية:

1. الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية):  
I have stopped writing stories for 3 years now. (have been stopping x)  
إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل (لأن الحدث على فترات متقطعة):  
Ahmed has finished typing three reports. (has been finishing x)  
أفعال الحالة وهي أفعال الشعور والحواس والملكية والمعرفة:  
We are good friends. We have known each other for 10 years. (have been knowing x)

Don't get  
confused

for - since

- 1 I haven't seen him ..... the war.  
a recently b for c since d already  
2 She has been writing her first novel ..... 2019.  
a since b for c just d ever  
3 Ali has lived abroad ..... his birth.  
a when b for c while d since  
4 Mai has been ill ..... the last week.  
a for b since c already d recently  
5 It's a month ..... Aya last visited her aunt.  
a for b since c of d to  
6 I have had an interest in literature ..... the age of sixteen.  
a in b for c at d since  
7 ..... how long have you been studying English?  
a For b Since c So far d Recently  
8 ..... when have you lived in your home?  
a How long b Recently c For d Since  
9 You can answer the question ..... you are a clever student.  
a since b for c recently d already





- He has been training hard ..... the last Olympic games.  
 a ever b for c just d ago  
 I have had this car ..... last year.  
 a since b when c for d ago  
 She left London ten years ago, and I haven't seen her ..... then.  
 a for b when c since d in  
 We haven't seen them ..... over a year.  
 a since b already c for d ago  
 It's exactly four years ..... I last played football.  
 a since b when c for d since  
 Ahmed is starving ..... he has eaten nothing for two days.  
 a yet b for c so d since  
 It's good to see you again. We haven't seen each other ..... a long time.  
 a yet b already c for d since  
 Mai is tired ..... she has been working hard all day.  
 a so b before c for d While  
 ..... the last meeting, we haven't seen each other again.  
 a For b During c Since d in  
 Al Daifi, Badr and Farouk have been friends ..... childhood.  
 a for b so far c since d in

Don't get confused

have gone to / have been to / have been in

- Ali ..... school. He has just arrived home.  
 a has been to b has been in c has gone to d has been  
 My father isn't here. He ..... his office.  
 a has been to b has been in c has gone to d has gone  
 Nada ..... Alex for two weeks. She's coming back next Sunday.  
 a has been to b has been in c has gone to d has gone  
 Have you ..... Luxor since you were born? - Of course, I've always lived here.  
 a gone in b gone to c been in d been to  
 My father ..... in London for more than four years. I really miss him very much.  
 a has gone to b has gone c has been to d has been  
 Ahmed is on holiday. He ..... to Italy.  
 a is gone b has gone c has been d was gone

Don't get confused

yet / already

- Wow, have you done your work ..... ?  
 a yet b ever c already d never  
 I can't believe it! Have you eaten all the food ..... ?  
 a already b just c ever d since  
 Have you eaten all the food ..... ? - You must have been very hungry.  
 a yet b since c recently d already  
 Have you eaten your meal ..... ? - No, I am still eating.  
 a already b just c yet d since

Don't get confused

have + P.P / have been + P.P / have been + ing

- She ..... football for about five years.  
 a plays b have played c has been played d has been playing



- Oh! I ..... my wallet. What can I do?  
 a have been losing b have lost c have been lost d had broken  
 Ahmed ..... typing three reports.  
 a has finished b has been finished c has been finishing d had been finished  
 I ..... my colleagues for many years now.  
 a have been knowing b have known c had known d had been knowing  
 Nada ..... for thirty-five years and she's still married now.  
 a has been marrying b have married c has been married d was marrying  
 ..... that we have to leave the building.  
 a It has informed us b It has been informed  
 c It has been informed us d We have been inform  
 The film ..... by many millions of people since it was made in 1968.  
 a has watched b has been watching c has been watched d had been watched  
 Our block of flats ..... since 2020.  
 a have repainted b has been repainted c has repainted d have been repainted  
 You're out of breath. .... ?  
 a Are you running b Have you run c Have you been running d Were you running

Don't get confused

Using linking words in the present

- We won't be able to live on Mars until we ..... enough water there.  
 a will find b have found c will be finding d found  
 After she ..... cooling the food, she will set the table.  
 a have finished b had finished c was finishing d has finished  
 I'll go to bed after I ..... my homework.  
 a did b was doing c had done d have done  
 As soon as she ..... in London, she will call me.  
 a arrive b had arrived c has arrived d arrived  
 He ..... come until I have phoned him.  
 a doesn't b didn't c won't d don't  
 After I have finished my work, I ..... home.  
 a going to go b go c will go d went  
 Don't worry; I won't leave until you .....  
 a have been arrived b had arrived c will arrive d have arrived  
 I won't be able to read it because I ..... my glasses.  
 a lost b have lost c will lose d lose



Exercises on Structure

- This is the most difficult situation I .....  
 a had ever been faced b have ever faced c had ever faced d have ever been faced  
 It ..... a year since I met Seif.  
 a has b was c is d had been  
 I haven't been here for .....  
 a some years b any years c years d the years  
 No one ..... spoken to me like that before.  
 a have never b has never c has ever d have ever  
 I ..... my pen friend yet.  
 a don't meet b hasn't met c haven't met d didn't meet  
 Everything is going well. We ..... any problems so far.  
 a didn't have b don't have c haven't had d hadn't had



1. It's two years ..... Joe.  
 a) for six months b) that I haven't seen c) since I didn't see d) since I last saw  
 2. Finally, my mother ..... how to use the internet. Now she can send e-mails.  
 a) that I don't see b) has learnt c) had learnt d) was learning  
 3. Mai is not hungry as she ..... a big dinner.  
 a) learns b) has learnt c) has been eaten d) has eaten  
 4. Everybody ..... a chance to talk in the conference.  
 a) was eating b) had eaten c) has been given d) has given  
 5. I am so happy; I ..... a medal for writing poetry.  
 a) have been given b) were given c) had won d) have won  
 6. I have studied French .....  
 a) was winning b) won c) recently d) b & c  
 7. Jana ..... her key. She can't get into the house.  
 a) yet b) lately c) had lost d) losing  
 8. Jana ..... her key. She couldn't get into the house.  
 a) lost b) has lost c) had lost d) losing  
 9. He has had three or four temporary jobs since ..... school.  
 a) leaving b) left c) has left d) had left  
 10. Many of today's great writers ..... as teachers.  
 a) are also working b) had also worked c) also worked d) are also working  
 11. Tamer is not hungry because he ..... a big lunch.  
 a) have also worked b) had also worked c) also worked d) are also working  
 12. Many people ..... up reading the books of Abdel-Tawab Youssef recently.  
 a) eats b) has eaten c) ate d) eaten  
 13. She ..... a book about why the writer became so successful.  
 a) have grown b) has grown c) had grown d) grew  
 14. Ahmed ..... a lot of health problems since he started living in that polluted city.  
 a) write b) has written c) have written d) written  
 15. Nothing like this has ..... happened to me.  
 a) has b) had c) has had d) having  
 16. They ..... what to do for the holidays yet.  
 a) up till now b) never c) ever d) recently  
 17. The last time I saw her was a week ago. This means .....  
 a) hadn't decided b) haven't decided c) don't decide d) won't decide  
 18. He hasn't played tennis since he was in the club last week. This means that .....  
 a) I haven't seen her for a week b) I have seen her for a week  
 c) I haven't seen her since a week d) A & B are correct.  
 19. It started to rain at 2 o'clock and it is still raining. This means .....  
 a) he played tennis in the club a week ago b) he didn't play tennis last week  
 c) he hasn't played tennis before d) he is still playing tennis in the club  
 20. I have not seen her for 2 months. This means .....  
 a) It's 2 months since I last saw her b) It's 2 months after I last saw her  
 c) It's 2 months before I last saw her d) It's 2 months when I last saw her  
 21. I started working here in 1998. This means .....  
 a) It has been raining at 2 o'clock b) It has been raining since 2 o'clock  
 c) It has been raining for 2 o'clock d) It has been raining in 2 o'clock  
 22. I started working here in 1998. This means .....  
 a) I have started work here since 1998 b) I haven't worked here since 1998  
 c) I have started working here since 1998 d) I have worked here since 1998

1. When I was on holiday, I ..... shopping every day.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 2. Since ..... Ahmed, I haven't heard from him.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 3. Tamer didn't answer the phone because he ..... a shower.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 4. How terrible! My friend Adel ..... an awful accident.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 5. My sister was doing the laundry while I ..... my room; everyone was busy doing a task.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 6. Where is Ali? - He ..... to the market and will be back soon.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 7. Have you finished your homework ..... ? - That is amazing!  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 8. Ali ..... play football when he was young.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 9. She used to be lazy but now she .....  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went  
 10. While I ..... in Luxor, I saw many monuments.  
 a) go b) goes c) was going d) went



# 1 Writing Vocabulary

مقال	الجملة الداعمة	type
essay	supporting sentence	persuasive
paragraph	closing sentence	descriptive
sentence	topic sentence	expository
statement	lastly (finally)	argumentative
indent	thesis	narrative
introduction	hook	sequence
body=bulk	introduce	contrast
conclusion	linking words (transition)	reason
conclude	summarise	result
introductory paragraph	due to	

## 2 Vocabulary for Translation

أحضر	أزمة	effect
achieve	crisis	get rid of
achievement	crises	handle
industry	journalist	skills
trade	journalism	values
investment	improve	reinforce
prosperity	prove	organisation
welfare	immigration	the Middle East
flourish	book fair	national
culture	illiteracy	national income
agriculture	adjust	social justice
disaster	civilization	

## 3 Chapter one

استعاد هبله	خوف شديد	orphan
get breath back	jump out of skin	character
blacksmith	leg-irons	mist
convict	marsh	crime
file	set off	guilty
handcuffs	commit	

احرص على اقتناء أقوى كتب  
المراجعات للثانوية العامة

للإمير

# 1 A persuasive essay

مقال اقناعي

Social media has a negative impact on news and society

## Introduction

Social media has become the **main source** of news. These days sixty-eight **percent** of people who have internet **access** get their news from social media. Although this **means** that we can find news easily and get **regular updates** on our phones, **in my view I think** social media has a **negative impact on** news and society.

To **begin with**, this **constant cycle** of news, which is **mostly** bad, can make people **stressed** and **worried**. A recent **survey** found that more than half of Americans say they get **anxious** and sleep badly because of the news.

**Next**, not everything we read or see on social media is **true** and **factual**. If we share it, before **checking** the facts, we might **spread** **false** information. **In turn**, this means that the **public** stop **trusting** **journalists** and news in general.

**Lastly**, social media starts to **control** what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become 'the **managing editors**'. They **share** news stories they like and **agree with**, so the news we see is not **balanced** or **objective**.

**In summary**, whilst it is a good thing that we have so much news **available** and it is easy to **keep up-to-date** with **current affairs**, we need to **avoid** the **negative effects**. It's important to be **careful about** where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have a **social responsibility** to make every **effort** not to spread **inaccurate** or **misleading** news.

## Conclusion

## اجزاء المقال الاقناعي

### 1) The Introduction المقدمة

Introduce topic.

قدم الموضوع.

Present both opinions briefly.

قدم كلا الرأيين بإيجاز

State your position clearly.

أذكر موقفك بوضوح

### 2) The main body الموضوع

Topic sentence for each paragraph.

الجملة الافتتاحية لكل فقرة في الموضوع

Examples / supporting statements

الأمثلة والجملة الداعمة

### 3) The conclusion الخاتمة

Sum up, re-state your opinion in different words

لخص، أعد صياغة رأيك بكلمات مختلفة

Suggest a solution or action.

اقترح حلاً أو إجراء



## 2 A persuasive essay

We still need guidebooks because we cannot rely on the opinion of people online.

### Introduction

With today's social media, it is possible to find online reviews of everything from a local park or café to a famous restaurant or museum. Before you book a holiday, you can read what other people think of a hotel or car hire company and what they recommend you do when you get there. Although this means you can get information very easily, in my view, this is not as useful information as you can get from a guidebook.

### body paragraph

To begin with, we need to ask ourselves why people write reviews online. Whilst it is sometimes because people like writing their opinions, at other times they have a reason for writing it. Perhaps they know the owners of the café, or perhaps they are the owners of the café! That is why they give it a good review.

Secondly, who are the people writing the reviews? It is difficult to know this information. If they are 50-year-old Europeans, will they have the same opinion as you? It is very hard to know if you are going to like the same places that they like.

Lastly, we need to remember that guidebook writers are usually experts. You can trust them for accurate information and a balanced point of view. They also know who is using their books, so if the book is intended to be for young people, they will recommend places that young people will like.

### Conclusion

To conclude, online reviews are useful, but it's important to remember that they are just people's opinions. If you want to know what experts think, personally I think you should buy a guidebook.

## عبارات المقال الاقناعي

### للتقديم

- ▶ to introduce the topic
- ▶ to start the paragraphs in the body
- ▶ to introduce the result of something
- ▶ to give an opinion
- ▶ to introduce an opposite opinion
- ▶ to give a reason for something
- ▶ to give contrasting information
- ▶ to give additional information
- ▶ to introduce a summary of the main points

لتقديم ملخص للنقاط الرئيسية

### نستخدم

- to begin with,
- firstly, / secondly, / next, / lastly,
- so / consequently / that's why
- personally, / in my view
- on the other hand
- due to / because of
- whilst / but / although
- in addition to that / as well as that
- to conclude, / to sum up, / finally,

## Exercises on Writing

- 1 Which expressions can you Not use to start your final paragraph in an essay?
  - a To sum up
  - b In conclusion
  - c To conclude
  - d Firstly
- 2 When you are writing, you can use "....." to give additional information.
  - a to conclude,
  - b to begin with,
  - c on the other hand
  - d as well as that
- 3 We can use "....." to introduce a summary of the main points.
  - a to conclude,
  - b to begin with,
  - c on the other hand
  - d as well as that
- 4 When you are writing, you can use "....." to introduce the topic.
  - a to conclude,
  - b to begin with,
  - c on the other hand
  - d as well as that
- 5 When you want to introduce an opposite opinion when you are writing you can say ....
  - a in the other way
  - b on the other hand
  - c by the other hand
  - d on one side
- 6 Which expressions introduce a sequence of ideas in an essay? There is more than one answer.
  - a In conclusion, Lastly, In summary
  - b On the one hand, On the other hand
  - c However, In contrast, Nevertheless
  - d Firstly, Secondly, Finally
- 7 When you are writing, you can use "....." to give an opinion.
  - a consequently
  - b whilst
  - c due to
  - d in my view
- 8 When you are writing, you can use "....." to introduce the result of something.
  - a consequently
  - b whilst
  - c due to
  - d in my view
- 9 When you are writing, you can use "....." to give a reason for something.
  - a consequently
  - b whilst
  - c due to
  - d in my view
- 10 When you are writing, you can use "....." to give contrasting information.
  - a consequently
  - b whilst
  - c due to
  - d in my view
- 11 We can use "to sum up,..." to .....
  - a introduce an opinion
  - b introduce the topic
  - c introduce a summary
  - d give a reason
- 12 In the ..... paragraph, the writer can suggest doing actions or solutions.
  - a topic
  - b second
  - c first
  - d final
- 13 A persuasive essay is the one that .....
  - a provides a clear, focused explanation of a topic.
  - b presents an extended evidence - based argument.
  - c tells a story about a personal experience or an imaginative one.
  - d provides a detailed sensory description of something.
- 14 We can use "because of,..." to .....
  - a introduce an opinion
  - b give contrasting information
  - c introduce a result
  - d give a reason
- 15 You summarise the content of your essay when you .....
  - a develop the main idea.
  - b write the elements of your essay in detail.
  - c make the end open.
  - d write the conclusion of your essay.
- 16 We use "although" in a paragraph or an essay to express.....
  - a summary
  - b contrast
  - c addition
  - d introduction
- 17 When writing an essay or a paragraph, you start with a/an ..... sentence.
  - a ending
  - b closing
  - c introductory
  - d conclusion
- 18 In a persuasive essay, each main paragraph usually starts with a .....
  - a hook
  - b supporting sentence
  - c topic sentence
  - d bulk
- 19 We use the topic sentence to introduce the ..... of the paragraph.
  - a main idea
  - b summary
  - c first idea
  - d final idea



- 24 We give reasons in the ..... to support .....  
 a body b topic sentence c introduction d conclusion
- 25 We use "Consequently" in a paragraph or an essay to .....  
 a introduce the result of something b give a reason for something  
 c give contrasting information d introduce a summary of the main point
- 26 Which of the following is correctly structured?  
 a He doesn't have any discipline whilst he's a very skillful player.  
 b He doesn't have any discipline because he's a very skillful player.  
 c He doesn't have any discipline so he's a very skillful player.  
 d He doesn't have any discipline despite he's a very skillful player.
- 27 "Not everything we read or see on social media is true and factual so it's important to be careful about the news on social media." This could be part of an essay about .....  
 a Social media is a double-edged weapon  
 b Social media doesn't have a negative impact on news and society  
 c Social media has a negative impact on news and society  
 d Social media has a positive impact on news and society
- 28 'Although we are surrounded by these mass-produced devices, this does not mean their use should be implemented in the future.' This is part of an essay about .....  
 a technology b equality c mobile phones d films
- 29 'Some employees are often overworked and are clearly heading for burnout. Despite this, they carry on as they are aware of the need to increase their productivity'. This could be part of an article about the problem of .....  
 a mental health and well-being.  
 b time management of certain employees.  
 c alternative ways of working.  
 d the need for companies to increase productivity.
- 30 When you conclude writing your essay, you should .....  
 a summarize its content c make the end open  
 b develop the main idea d put a full stop.
- 31 What linking word could you NOT use instead of 'whilst'?  
 a consequently b although c however d but
- 32 Which of the following sentences can be used to introduce a piece of information that adds to, or supports the previous statement?  
 a To sum up, distance learning is most suitable for those who cannot attend lessons or lectures face to face.  
 b It is taken for granted that distance learning is a type of learning that is mostly used during a pandemic.  
 c However, some students can't interact effectively in this type of learning environment.  
 d Moreover, distance learning saves time and effort, which is most useful to those who work while they are learning or live in far places.
- 33 On ending an essay on unemployment, you can use .....  
 a Firstly, we should know what causes unemployment.  
 b Moreover, a lot of young people insist on having a job in the city where they live.  
 c In conclusion, we should all do our best to solve this problem which hinders stability.  
 d Above all, we need to encourage the private sector to provide more work chances for young people.

## Structurally correct sentences (unit one)

- 1 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a Since years, I haven't played football. b It's years since I have last played football.  
 c It's years since I played football. d I had played football years ago.
- 2 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a While he came, I was watching TV. b While watching TV, he came.  
 c While I was watching TV, he came. d During watching TV, he came.
- 3 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a He is used to smoking, but now he doesn't. b He used to smoke, but now he doesn't.  
 c He was used to smoke, but now he doesn't. d He used to smoke, but now he isn't.
- 4 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I have been knowing her for 20 years now. b I have been known her for 20 years now.  
 c I have known her for 20 years now. d I have known her 20 years ago.
- 5 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a It is time Ahmed go home. b It is time for Ahmed went home.  
 c It is time Ahmed going home. d It is time Ahmed went home.
- 6 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I have been to Italy and Turkey this year. b I have been in Italy and Turkey this year.  
 c I have gone to Italy and Turkey this year. d I has been to Italy and Turkey this year.
- 7 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a Last year, he went to school by car every day.  
 b Last year, he was going to school by car every day.  
 c Last year, he has been to school by car every day.  
 d Last year, he goes to school by car every day.
- 8 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I didn't see him since the last time we met.  
 b I haven't seen him since the last time we meet.  
 c I haven't seen him for the last time we met.  
 d I haven't seen him since the last time we met.
- 9 Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?  
 a No accident like this has never happened in our area.  
 b No accident like this has ever happened in our area.  
 c No accident like this has ever been happened in our area.  
 d No accident like this has been happened in our area.
- 10 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a Ali is used to watch action movies. b Ali get used to watching action movies.  
 c Ali used to watch action movies. d Ali used to watching action movies.
- 11 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a Mai can't open the door because she lost her keys.  
 b Mai can't open the door because she had lost her keys.  
 c Mai can't open the door because she has lost her keys.  
 d Mai can't open the door because she was losing her keys.



In the next decade, most of us will be working online with the help of Artificial Intelligence.  
 في العقد القادم ، سيعمل معظمنا عبر الإنترنت بمساعدة الذكاء الاصطناعي.  
 في القرن القادم ، سيعمل معظمنا مع الذكاء الاصطناعي بمساعدة الذكاء الاصطناعي.  
 في القرن القادم ، سيعمل معظمنا عبر الإنترنت بمساعدة الذكاء الاصطناعي.

Online distance learning is a method of instruction, which connects learners with educational resources.  
 التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي لا يربط المتعلمين بالموارد التعليمية.  
 التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي يفصل المتعلمين عن الموارد التعليمية.  
 التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي يربط المتعلمين بالموارد التعليمية.  
 التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أسلوب تعليمي يربط المتعلمين بالموارد التعليمية.

All economic reforms aim to realize high rates of growth and investment in a bid to create new jobs for youth.  
 تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار عالية في محاولة لخلق وظائف جديدة للشباب.  
 تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار عالية في محاولة لخلق وظائف جديدة للشباب.  
 تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار عالية في محاولة لخلق وظائف جديدة للشباب.  
 تهدف جميع الإصلاحات الاقتصادية إلى تحقيق معدلات نمو واستثمار عالية في محاولة لخلق وظائف جديدة للشباب.

Livelihood is not merely money, but it can be in health and peace of mind.  
 التمتع بالصحة وسلامة العقل هما نتيجة امتلاك المال فاعليك أن تحيا بسلام وراحة بال.  
 الحياة هي فقط المال ، ولكن سبيل العيش يمكن أن يكون في الصحة وراحة البال .  
 الحياة ليست مجرد مال ، ولكنها يمكن أن تكون في الصحة وراحة البال .  
 لا سبيل للعيش بدون المال فهو الذي يجلب لنا الصحة وراحة البال .

The need for life-long learning has become urgent, especially as we live in the age of globalization.  
 أصبحت الحاجة إلى التعلم مدى الحياة ملحة ، خاصة أننا نعيش في عصر العولمة.  
 أصبحت الحاجة إلى التعلم مدى الحياة ملحة ، خاصة أننا نعيش في عصر العولمة.  
 أصبحت الحاجة إلى التعلم مدى الحياة ملحة ، خاصة أننا نعيش في عصر العولمة.  
 أصبحت الحاجة إلى التعلم مدى الحياة ملحة ، خاصة أننا نعيش في عصر العولمة.

The magnificent hero, Ahmed El Mansy, said these impressive words before giving a life to keep Egypt's greatness, "Protect Egypt, it deserves more."  
 البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحي بحياته ليحافظ على عظمة مصر .. إنها تستحق أكثر.  
 البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحي بحياته ليحافظ على عظمة مصر .. إنها تستحق أكثر.  
 البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحي بحياته ليحافظ على مكانة مصر .. إنها تستحق أكثر.  
 البطل الرائع أحمد المنسي قال هذه الكلمات الرائعة قبل أن يضحي بحياته ليحافظ على عظمة مصر .. إنها تستحق أقل.

Life is no longer as easy as our parents were used to. It has become full of struggle and severe competition due to our growing aspirations for more welfare.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.

Life is no longer as easy as our parents were used to. It has become full of struggle and severe competition due to our growing aspirations for more welfare.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.  
 الحياة لم تعد سهلة كما اعتاد أبجدادنا ، لقد أصبحت الحياة مليئة بالصراعات والمنافسة الشرسة بسبب طموحاتنا المتزايدة في المزيد من الرفاهية.

يجب أن يلعب الجميع دورًا إيجابيًا في تنمية بلدنا حتى تنعم الأجيال القادمة بالرخاء.

- Everyone should play positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.
- Everyone should play a positive rule in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.
- Everyone should play a positive role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.
- Everyone should play a negative role in the development of our country so that future generations can enjoy prosperity.

يمثل العلم العمود الفقري للتقدم والحضارة عبر العصور. كما أن التعليم الجيد أساسي لعملية التنمية لأنه يرفع قدرات الشباب ويملئ مواهبهم.

- Science represents the backbone of progress and civilization through the ages. Also, quality education is essential to the development process because it raises youth capabilities and develops their talents.
- Science represent the backbone of progress and civilization through the ages. Also, quality educational is essential to the development process because it raises youth capabilities and develops their talented.
- Science represents the backbone of progress and civilization through the ages. Also, quality education is unessential to the development process because it raises youth disabilities and develops their talents.
- Science represents the backbone of process and civilization through the ages. Also, quality education is essential for the development process because it rises youth capabilities and develops their talents.

إنشاء مقابلي الشخصية الأولى للعمل. ارتبكت بسهولة ولم استطع أن أقدم نفسي بطريقة لائقة للمحاور ، لذلك أمل في المرة القادمة أن أبلى بلاءاً حسناً.

- During my first job interview, I was easily confused and unable to present himself in an elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will do well.
- During my first job interview, I was easily confused and able to present myself in an elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will make well.
- During my first job interview, I was easily confused and unable to present myself in an elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will do well.
- During my last job interview, I was easy confused and unable to represent myself in an elegant way to the interviewer, so I hope next time I will do well.

تنفذ الحكومة العديد من المشاريع القومية العملاقة مثل مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة ومحطات الطاقة واستصلاح الأراضي الصحراوية للزراعة.

- The government is implementing many gigantic national projects such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for culture.
- The government is implementing many gigantic national project such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for agriculture.
- The government is implementing many tiny national projects such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for agriculture.
- The government is implementing many gigantic national projects such as the New Administrative Capital project, power stations and desert land reclamation for agriculture.





## Exercises on Story

- 1 A ..... is a person whose job is to make and repair things made of iron, especially horseshoes.  
 a blacksmith b carpenter c convict d apprentice
- 2 The ..... along the coast are home to many shorebirds.  
 a deserts b mountains c forests d marshes
- 3 He showed great ..... returning to the sport after his accident.  
 a person b character c hero d personal
- 4 There was a report on the news about an escaped .....  
 a victim b officer c convict d crime
- 5 Reports suggest that the singer ..... suicide.  
 a committed b made c noticed d sentenced
- 6 This month's figures show an increase in violent .....  
 a crime b criminal c victim d convict
- 7 I'll set ..... early to avoid the traffic.  
 a off b on c up d of
- 8 The graveyard looked ghostly, enveloped in .....  
 a list b gas c mist d smell
- 9 I feel so ..... about forgetting her birthday. I should have remembered it.  
 a happy b relaxed c content d guilty
- 10 People watched in ..... as the plane crashed to the ground.  
 a entertainment b horror c happiness d relaxation
- 11 He was brought into the court in .....  
 a handcuffs b sleeves c car d jail
- 12 He burst into the room, red-faced and out of ..... because of excitement.  
 a breathe b breathless c breath d breeze
- 13 The loud noise made me jump out of my .....  
 a shirt b leg c skin d leather
- 14 She ..... the child's hand and ran.  
 a gave b grabbed c grip d fill
- 15 She used a ..... to make her nails look pretty.  
 a file b hammer c knife d pliers

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Do you know that saving energy means saving money? Homeowners<sup>(1)</sup> and renters<sup>(2)</sup> know this basic fact, but they often don't know what kinds of adjustments<sup>(3)</sup> they can make in their homes and apartments<sup>(4)</sup> that will result in saving. For those willing to spend some time and money to reap long-term energy saving, an energy audit<sup>(5)</sup> is the way to go. An energy auditor<sup>(6)</sup> will come pinpoint<sup>(7)</sup> areas of your energy use and cost. Trained Energy auditors know what to look for and can locate a variety<sup>(8)</sup> of flaws<sup>(9)</sup> that may be resulting in energy inefficiency<sup>(10)</sup>, including inadequate insulation<sup>(11)</sup>, construction flaws, and uneven heat distribution<sup>(12)</sup>. There are quicker and less costly measures<sup>(13)</sup> that can be taken as well. One way to save money is to replace incandescent<sup>(14)</sup> lights with fluorescents. This can result in a saving of more than 50% on your monthly lighting costs. When it's time to replace old appliances, <sup>(15)</sup> it's wise to spend a bit more; for an energy-efficient model, and be sure that you are

## Read all about it!

taking advantage of energy-saving settings already on your current refrigerator<sup>(16)</sup>, dishwasher, washing machine, or dryer. Windows provide another opportunity<sup>(17)</sup> to cut down your energy cost. Caulk old windows that might be leaky<sup>(18)</sup> to prevent drafts and choose double-paned windows if you're building, an addition or replacing old windows. Most areas of your home or apartment offer opportunities to save energy and money. The results are significant<sup>(19)</sup> and well worth<sup>(20)</sup> the effort.

- A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1 What would happen if we used inefficient appliances? We would.....  
 a reduce our monthly lighting costs  
 b decrease our opportunity to cut our energy costs  
 c reduce our opportunity to cut our energy costs  
 d increase our monthly lighting costs
- 2 To sum up this passage, we can say saving energy.....  
 a wastes money b costs money  
 c means saving money d decreases money
- 3 Mention the difference between using incandescent lights and florescent lights.  
 a Florescent lights save energy and money  
 b Florescent lights increase energy and money  
 c Incandescent lights save energy and money  
 d Incandescent lights decrease energy and money
- 4 Which of the following is a true statement?  
 a We can't save energy without the help of the energy auditor  
 b We can save energy if the energy auditor doesn't help us  
 c We can save energy with the help of the energy auditor  
 d We can't save energy with the help of the energy auditor
- 5 According to the passage, the energy auditor's advice will help homeowners and renters to.....  
 a waste energy and money b use more energy and less money  
 c use less energy and more money d save energy and money
- 6 Which of the following can best express the main idea of this passage?  
 a Hiring an auditor will save money b The best ways to save energy  
 c Replacing windows and light bulbs are well worth the effort and cost  
 d Homeowners and renters don't know what to do to save energy and money
- 7 Double-paned windows could.....  
 a increase heating expenses b provide efficient energy  
 c only be used in new additions to homes d only be used as replacement windows
- 8 According to the passage, an energy auditor doesn't.....  
 a fix inefficient appliances b check for construction flaws  
 c look for problems with heat distribution d offer solutions to lower your energy costs

- ١٤ ساطع  
 ١٥ الأجهزة  
 ١٦ تلاجع  
 ١٧ فرصة  
 ١٨ راسخ  
 ١٩ يارز  
 ٢٠ قيمة

أحرص على اقتناء أقوى كتب  
 المراجعات للثالوية العامة

التأهيل



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 My brother likes to ..... school activities.  
a take place in b take part in c take in
- 2 While I was walking, I met ..... boy.  
a ten-year b ten years c ten years'
- 3 She used to be a clever student but now she .....  
a didn't b hasn't c isn't
- 4 As far as I am ..... honesty is the basis of trade.  
a concern b concerns c concerning
- 5 The plane took off and quickly started to ..... height.  
a lose b gain c beat
- 6 Ali ..... Rami was very ill.  
a told b said c said to
- 7 Don't forget ..... our books with you the next time you come.  
a to bring b to bringing c bringing
- 8 We were made ..... a lot of boring history books at school.  
a read b reading c to read
- 9 Having ..... , our homework was marked by Mr Al Daifi.  
a had done b being done c doing
- 10 Ali is the boy by ..... I was helped.  
a whose b who c whom
- 11 She received her ..... as Mum of the Year.  
a rewarding b award c a ward
- 12 I refuse to live under the same roof with that ..... man.  
a kind b exciting c interesting
- 13 You've ..... a great job - thank you Sam.  
a done b made c taken
- 14 Our block of flats ..... since 2012.  
a have built b has been built c has built
- 15 The judge described him as a danger to .....  
a society b social c sociable
- 16 Her unexpected visit made us .....  
a confused b confusion c confuse
- 17 Unfortunately, the ..... of this immune disease is still unknown.  
a aim b advantage c reason
- 18 I usually do my homework ..... my own; no one helps me to do it.  
a at b from c with
- 19 Dr Ahmed suggests that I ..... on a diet to lose weight and be more healthy.  
a going b go c went
- 20 Tourism is a great ..... of national income in Egypt.  
a store b mean c source
- 21 Success in life is based ..... hard work and cooperation.  
a on b in c at
- 22 While I ..... my homework, my sister was preparing dinner.  
a was being done b was doing c did
- 23 .....  
a take on b a ten-year c doesn't d concerned
- 24 .....  
d earn
- 25 .....  
d asked
- 26 .....  
d bring
- 27 .....  
d having read
- 28 .....  
d been done
- 29 .....  
d that
- 30 .....  
d reward
- 31 .....  
d horrible
- 32 .....  
d given
- 33 .....  
d have been built
- 34 .....  
d socially
- 35 .....  
d confusing
- 36 .....  
d cause
- 37 .....  
d on
- 38 .....  
d goes
- 39 .....  
d origin
- 40 .....  
d from
- 41 .....  
d am doing

Finish the following dialogue:

Policeman  
Driver  
Policeman  
Driver  
Policeman  
Driver  
Policeman  
Driver  
Policeman  
Driver  
Policeman

A traffic policeman talking to a driver:

Your driving licence, please.

Here it is.

Your licence is expired, ① .....

Yes, I know but ② .....

You have exceeded the speed limit<sup>(2)</sup>.

③ .....

This is a 60 km zone per hour, not 90.

④ .....

OK. You can pay this fine at once. Next time, be careful.

⑤ ..... ⑥ .....

It is 150 pounds.

A Translate into Arabic:

1 All Egyptian people should stand one hand to prove to the whole world that they still deserve the nickname "civilization and history makers".

2 Our deserts are one of our chief sources of wealth. If we give them due care, we can increase our national income and solve many of our problems.

3 Freedom of speech is a right to every person in our society. You can express your personal opinion freely.

B Translate into English:

1 إن قضية إصلاح التعليم من أخطر القضايا التي تواجه المجتمع المصري حيث إن البحث العلمي أحد ركائز الأمن القومي.

2 تسمى الحكومة جاهدة إلى توفير احتياجات الشعب بكل السبل الممكنة وهذا يستلزم زيادة الإنتاج وتنظيم النسل.

3 لقد أحرزت مصر تقدما كبيرا في مختلف مجالات الصناعة و التعليم و التكنولوجيا الحديثة.

C Write a paragraph (120 words) about "Mass media":

Enrich your language

deserve	تستحق	speech	خطاب	people's needs	احتياجات الشعب
nickname	لقب	stability	الاستقرار	national income	الدخل القومي
fields	حقول / مجالات	strenuous	شاق	birth control	تنظيم النسل
civilization	الحضارة	needs	احتياجات	education reform	إصلاح التعليم
solve	يحل	production	الإنتاج	history makers	صناع التاريخ
serve	يخدم	unity	وحدة	sources of wealth	مصادر الثروة
freedom	الحرية	welfare	الرفاهية	personal opinion	رأي شخصي
industry	صناعة	production	إنتاج	modern technology	التكنولوجيا الحديثة



الأهداف العامة للوحدة  
Objectives

**Reading:** Extract information from three texts. **Writing:** A report on the results of a survey.  
**Listening:** Listen to a podcast about girls in education.  
**Speaking:** Make a speech about equality.  
**Language:** Comparatives and superlatives; past perfect simple and past perfect continuous.  
**Life skills:** Identifying inequality and challenging stereotypes.

## 1 Main Vocabulary

good-natured (adj) ذو طبيعة جيدة	challenging (adj) صعب / مثير للتحدي	survey
cheerful (adj) مبتهج / مرح	miserable (adj) يأس	scholarship
grumpy (adj) متذمر / نكد	fascinating (adj) رائع	professional
cross (adj) غضبان / مزعج	impressive (adj) مبهر	demonstrate
patient (adj) صبور / مريض	well-behaved (adj) مؤدب	attitude
impatient (adj) غير صبور	significant (adj) هام	reflect
cruel (adj) قاسي	fair (adj) (n) عادل / معرض	volunteer
cross (adj) غضبان / مزعج	unfair (adj) غير عادل	honour (v) (n) تكريم
qualified (adj) مؤهل	inspire (v) يلهم	percentage
qualify (v) يؤهل	inspiring (adj) ملهم / مثير	unreasonable
(adj) confident واثق	graph رسم بياني	master's degree
confidence (n) ثقة	physics فيزياء	workplace مكان العمل
role model قدوة / مثل أعلى	physicist فيزيائي	extract استخراج
lecturer محاضر	treat يعالج / يعالج	mission مهمة
tournament دورة	treatment علاج / معاملة	grade درجة
court ملعب	mental عقلي	obstacle عقبة
Grand Slams بطولات تنس	influence (v) (n) تأثير / يؤثر	suburb ضاحية
round جولة / فكرة شائعة	alternatives بدائل	pharmacist صيدلي
stereotype قالب / صورة نمطية	discrimination تمييز / عنصرية	association منظمة
prejudice ظلم / تحيز	rank رتبة / يصف	specialise يتخصص
contribution مساهمة	equality مساواة	wind tunnels أنفاق الهواء
award (v) (n) جائزة / مكافأة / يمنح جائزة	compete يتنافس	aerospace الفضاء
obtain (v) يحصل على / يمتلك	innovate يبدع	formula معادلة
spark (v) (n) شرارة / يشعل	identify يعرف هوية	department قسم
defy يواجه / يتحدى	assume يفترض	swing أرجوحة

## 2 Additional Vocabulary

remarkable (adj) مميز	results نتائج
obvious (adj) واضح	biology علم الأحياء
special (adj) خاص / مميز	chemistry كيمياء
medical (adj) طبي	development تطوير
hopeful (adj) متفهم بالأمل	major رئيسي
private (adj) خاص	especially خاصة
fixed (adj) ثابت / محدد	fans معجبين
female أنثى	patience الصبر
rice straw قش الأرز	STEM مدارس استيم
condition ظرف / شرط	attention انتباه
symbol رمز	engine محرك
produce ينتج	require يتطلب
generate يولد / ينتج	surprising مدهش
consider يعتبر	invention اختراع
speech خطاب	strength قوة
director مدير / مخرج	fuel الوقود
author مؤلف	planet كوكب
celebrate يحتفل	caring مهتم / عاقل
career حياة مهنية	difficulties صعوبات
staring بطولية	remain يبقى / يظل
minority أقلية	region منطقة
majority أغلبية	available متاح
figures ارقام / بيانات	previously سابقا
encourage يشجع	raise يثير / يرفع
reaction تفاعل / رد فعل	rise يرتفع / ينهض
liquid سائل	degree الدرجة العلمية

## Synonyms &amp; Antonyms

## word meaning

grumpy متذمر / نكد	↔
cross غضبان / مزعج	↔
cheerful مبتهج / مرح	↔
patient صبور / هادئ	↔
cruel قاسي	↔
naughty سيء السلوك	↔
qualified مؤهل	↔

## Synonym

in a bad mood - irritable
annoyed - very angry
happy - glad - pleasant
forgiving - tolerant
evil - inhumane - unkind
playful - badly-behaved
efficient - experienced

## Antonym

good-natured - cheerful
cheerful - happy - pleasant
depressed - upset - gloomy
impatient - intolerant
kind - humane - merciful
well-behaved - obedient
inexperienced - unqualified



### 3 Prepositions

good	for	مفيد لـ
	at	جيد في
a variety	of	تشكيلة من
proud		لغورب
suitable		مناسب لـ
look	for	يبحث عن
available		متاح لـ

be	interested in	مهتم بـ
	keen on	متحمس لـ
cross	with	غاضب من
argue		يجادل مع
relate		يرتبط بـ
move	to	ينتقل إلى
look up		يتطلع إلى

### 4 Expressions & Idioms

make a contribution	يقدم إسهامات	get used to	يتعود على
make a speech	يلقي خطاب	give advice	يعطي نصيحة
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	give reasons	يشرح أسباب
make the best of things	يصنع أفضل الأشياء	mountain climber	متسلق جبال
do sports	يعمار الرياضة	equal amount of	كمية متساوية من
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	win tournaments	يفوز بالبطولات
name after	يسمى باسم	win a match	يفوز بمباراة

### 5 Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
suit	ملاءمة / مناسبة/صلاحية	suitable
challenge	التحدي	challenging
hope	الأمل	hopeful
treat	علاج	treatable
qualify	مؤهّل	qualified
encourage	تشجيع	encouraging
inspire	إلهام	inspired / inspiring
impress	انطباع	impressive
advise	نصيحة	advisable

### 6 Definitions

award	جائزة / مكافأة / يمنح جائزة	a prize or symbol given to recognize an achievement
contribution	مساهمة	something you do help make something useful
prejudice	ظلم / تحيز	an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you don't have enough knowledge
qualify	يؤهل	successfully finish a training course so you can do a job
role model	قدوة / مثل أعلى	a person young people can look up to and try to be like them
stereotype	قالب / صورة نمطية	a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like
grumpy	متذمر / حاد الطبع	bad-tempered / easily annoyed
physicist	فيزيائي	an expert in physics
court	ملعب	a place where tennis is played
lecturer	محاضر	a person teaches at university
Grand Slam	بطولات تنس	a set of very important competitions in a particular sport in the same year in tennis, golf or rugby; one of the individual competitions that make up a Grand Slam
tournament	دورة	a competition where there are a number of people competing to win a cup or prize
round	جولة	a stage in a sports competition
cross	غضبان / متزعج	annoyed or angry
significant	هام	important or noticeable

### Listening

#### A report about a handball player

What's her dream?

In 2021 Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma had been playing top handball for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma had already played for the **Egyptian youth team**, the under-eighteens and before she **graduated** she had played for the under-twenties. She became **one of the best women** handball players in the country. In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we **spoke to** Fatma, she said that in the past the country had **spent** a lot of **money on** the men's handball team, which helped it to become very **successful**. She hoped that the sports **organisers** would spend money on a women's team in the future. She also **pointed out** that in the past women had been very successful in other sports such as Hedaya Malak and Sara Ahmed who **won medals** at the 2016 **Olympics**. She said there was no **reason** women handball players could not do **extremely well** too. Let's **hope** that soon her **dream** will come **true** and that there will be an **international** Egyptian handball team for women over twenty one. We are sure that they will be very successful.



## People who inspire ← Firsts for Egyptian women

This week, we are celebrating three remarkable Egyptian women who broke down stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important and continues to grow.

### Hilana Sedarous

Born: (1904 - 1998)

Education: London Medical School



Hilana Sedarous was the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor in modern Egypt and scholars believe that she was the first Arab woman to be a doctor, too. She was born in Tanta and was sent to London in 1922 to study **mathematics** with five other Egyptian students. However, while she was there, she decided to study medicine instead. They were considered one of the first medical students to study in England. In 1930, after going through many **obstacles**, she **qualified** as a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened a **private clinic** for women. She was **treating** **patients** until she was 70 years old. After **retiring**, she started writing and **translating** stories for children.

### Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa

Born: 1998

Awards: 1<sup>st</sup> place in the Intel Science and **Engineering** competition, NASA named a **planet** after her family (Moustafa31910) recognizing her **contribution** to science.

Education: Maadi STEM School for Girls Middle East Technical University



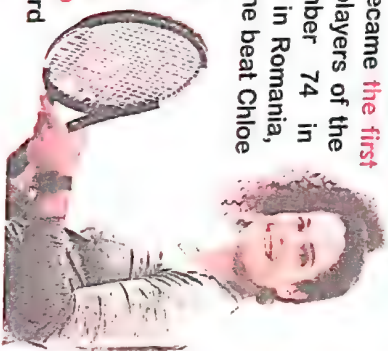
Yasmeen is a **role model** for other young Egyptian. Born in Damietta, she **defied** **stereotypes** by **moving** to Cairo alone to by her mother. The CEO of Intel Egypt said that Yasmeen has received a "**unique**" honour, adding that her success in the field of **scientific** **research** is considered an achievement for which encourages youth to be **creative**. Yasmeen's winning **invention** was sparked by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that **burning rice straw** gave clean water and also produced a **natural fuel** which can be used to **generate** **electricity**. She says her school gave her the confidence to **innovate** and to **defy** **prejudice**. 'I believe I can change the world', she proudly states.



However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympics. Giana Farouk won a bronze medal at the **same** event. Giana had also won a gold medal medals at the World **Championships** (two in Germany in 2014 and one in Austria in 2016).

Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif became the **first** Egyptian woman to be **ranked** in woman the **top** 100 players of the Women's Tennis **Association** (WTA), reaching number 74 in September. This was after she **reached** the WTA finals in Romania, where she **lost** to Andrea Petkovic. Earlier in the year, she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first **round** of the 2021 Australian Open. Up until then, no Egyptian woman had won a **match** in a Grand Slam tournament.

These great women **athletes** and many others **faced** many **obstacles** and **challenges**. However, they **were** **able** to **overcome** them and **proudly** put Egypt on the world map of sports. The secret **formula** for their success was hard work, **determination** and a lot of **patience**.



## Book of the week



What Katy Did, written by the American Susan Coolidge in 1835, is still an **inspiration** to many of today's **female authors**. The story **follows** the **adventures** of 12-year-old Katy and her younger brothers and sisters. Katy had no mother and her father was a **busy** doctor, so the children were **looked after** by their kind aunt.

Katy wanted to be like a mother to her brothers and sisters, but was often impatient, naughty and liked to have **dangerous adventures**. One day, she **decided** to use a new **swing**, although her aunt had told her not to use it because it was **broken**. Katy fell from the swing and badly **hurt** her back. She could not walk and had to stay in bed. This made her very unhappy and **cross**, until she was visited by her cousin Helen.

Helen was **disabled** and she taught Katy to be **patient**. She also showed her how to **behave** in a more **caring** way to her younger brothers and sisters. After her aunt became ill and **died**, Katy became the head of the family. **At the end of the book**, she had become a **wiser**, better person, and she learnt to walk again.

## 2021: A great year for Egyptian women athletes!

2021 was an **amazing** year for Egyptian **female** **athletes**. At the Tokyo Olympic Games, Ferial Abdelaziz became the first **female** Egyptian to **win** the karate gold medal. Ferial studied to become a **pharmacist**, and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a **bronze** medal at the World **Championships** in Spain and a silver medal at the 2019 Africa Games in Morocco.





# 7 Notice the Difference

lecture	محاضرة / يعطي محاضرة
nature	طبيعة
challenge	يتحدى / تحدي
recognise	يتعرف على (شكل...)
encourage to + inf.	يشجع على
degree	درجة حرارة / مؤهل جامعي / درجة علمية
available	متاح
alone	بفرد
special	خاص (مميز)
confidence	ثقة
volunteer	متطوع
at a time	في ذلك الوقت (تشير الى الماضي)
tradition	عرف / تقاليد
proud of	فتخرب
mental	عقلي
cross	خاضب

lecturer	محاضر (الشخص الذي يلقي المحاضرة)
natural	طبيعي
challenging	صعب / مثير للتحدي
realise	يدرك / يفهم
discourage from + V + ing	يمنع من / يوق
grade	مستوى / صف دراسي / درجة امتحان
valuable	قيم / ذو قيمة
lonely	يشعر بالوحدة
private	خاص (ملكية)
confident	واثق
voluntary	تطوعي
on time	بالضبط / في الوقت المحدد
traditional	تقليدي
take pride in	يفتخر بـ
physical	بدني
across	حول / عبر

Destruction of the environment is one of the most serious ..... we face.

I'm very ..... in our ability to maintain leadership.

What ..... did you get in your maths exam?

The company has a ..... logo that makes it well known.

I arrived at school ..... time.

Grandpa was born in 1950, ..... time when few houses had electricity.

In some countries it is ..... for a bride to wear white.

It's ..... for men to get married in black in my country.

All Egyptians are very proud ..... this massive engineering project.

As a ..... on the childcare project, I really appreciate life.

These drugs are only ..... on prescription.

I see you have a ..... in biology and chemistry from Alexandria University.

Try to ..... the best of things to achieve your goals.

..... make

challenge

challenging

challenges

confidence

confident

importance

qualification

degree

licence

common

general

private

at

of

on

at

of

on

traditional

tradition

habit

custom

traditionally

habit

off

of

at

lecture

voluntary

volunteer

valuable

available

availability

degree

temperature

licence

do

made

go



## award

reward  
rewarding  
a ward

1. I gave him a **reward** as he saved my life.  
2. Teaching is a **rewarding** job.  
3. The **ward** was full of people infected with Covid.

4. The look on her face when I told her was ..... enough.

5. Angelina Jolie scooped up the ..... for best actress.

6. The literature course has been hard work, but very ..... .

7. Nada was in London to receive her ..... as Mum of the Year.

8. She got no ..... for all the hard work she did.

9. She showed great **courage** throughout her illness.

10. My teacher has **encouraged** and supported me.

11. We use bonuses as an **encouragement** to the staff.

12. The sales figures are very **encouraging**.

13. Don't let her comments **discourage** you.

14. We were greatly ..... by the support we received.

15. We tried to ..... him from resigning.

16. Despite the ..... findings, we remain cautious.

17. With a little ..... from his parents he should do well.

18. **alone, lonely & only**

19. All my family travelled abroad and I live **alone**.

20. Although I live with my family, I feel **lonely**.

21. He led a ..... life with few friends.

22. My wife and I like to spend time ..... together away from the kids.

23. It's an interesting job, but it's ..... temporary.

24. Ali was the **first** one to leave the class.

25. Mai was the first girl ..... a high mark in English exam.

## Her story

affect

effect

effectiveness

effectively

effect

effectively

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

effect

## affect

1. Smoking **affects** our health badly.  
2. Smoking has a bad **effect** on our health.  
3. Yoga is a very **effective** technique for combating stress.  
4. There are doubts about the **effectiveness** of the new drug.  
5. She demonstrated the software very **effectively**.

6. Your opinion will not ..... my decision. (Choose two answers)

7. The project has had a direct ..... on the lives of one million people. (Choose 2)

8. We were all deeply ..... by her death.

9. This ingredient also has the ..... of making your skin look younger.

10. The vaccines will be safe and ..... if used properly.

11. The press can have a powerful ..... on the way people react in everyday life.

12. The press is ..... on the way people react in everyday life.

## raise - rise - arise - arouse

raise (d) + يرفع

rise (rose - risen) يرفع / يترفع

arise (arose - arisen) يترفع عن الحذر / يبتعد / يبتلع

arouse (d) + يثير

1. It was our policy to deal with problems as they ..... .

2. The charity hopes to ..... five million pounds to build a new hospital for children.

3. A serious problem can ..... if the heart stops pumping effectively.

4. Her strange behaviour ..... our suspicions.

5. The massive statues were cut into pieces and ..... over 60 metres up the cliff.

6. The company decided to ..... the salaries of its employees by 10%.

7. I had to ..... up my voice in order to make myself heard over.

8. It was dark when I woke up because the sun had not yet ..... .



quiet	هادئ
quite	إلى حد ما / مقادير
quit	يتنازل / يستقيل

- Keep quiet! The baby is asleep.
- The exam is quite difficult.
- I'll quit this game. It's boring.

- 42 It's a nice car. The engine's really .....  
☐ a quiet ☐ quit ☐ quite ☐ quietly
- 43 She has decided to ..... show business.  
☐ a quiet ☐ quite ☐ quietly ☐ quit
- 44 The food in the canteen is usually ..... good.  
☐ a quiet ☐ quite ☐ quietly ☐ quit

Don't get confused

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- 45 "The internet's influence is growing every day." In this sentence, 'influence' is an synonym of .....  
☐ effect ☐ effective ☐ affect ☐ effectively
- 46 Encourage and depress are .....  
☐ synonyms ☐ antonyms ☐ adjectives ☐ the same meaning
- 47 It might be obvious to you, but it isn't to me. The antonym of "obvious" is .....  
☐ clear ☐ unclear ☐ clean ☐ simple
- 48 Worried and anxious are .....  
☐ verbs ☐ opposites ☐ antonyms ☐ synonyms
- 49 We're considering buying a new car. The synonym of "consider" is .....  
☐ attract ☐ guard ☐ regard ☐ invest
- 50 I hadn't had enough sleep and was feeling a bit grumpy. Grumpy is a synonym for .....  
☐ in a bad mood ☐ in a good mood ☐ glad ☐ pleasant
- 51 "My Dad gets cross with me if I leave the kitchen in a mess." The adjective 'cross' in this sentence is antonymous with .....  
☐ grumpy ☐ very angry ☐ annoyed ☐ cheerful
- 52 He is well qualified for the job, but he does lack personality. Qualified here means .....  
☐ experienced ☐ inexperienced ☐ inefficient ☐ naughty
- 53 "Now that's naughty - you mustn't throw food on the floor!" The word 'naughty' here can be replaced by .....  
☐ respect ☐ good-natured ☐ badly-behaved ☐ well-behaved

### Exercises on Vocabulary

- 54 It is a ..... to think that women always do housework.  
☐ prejudice ☐ stereotype ☐ type ☐ incident
- 55 What is the best ..... for a headache?  
☐ treat ☐ treatment ☐ illness ☐ surgeon
- 56 The students will be playing tennis on ..... number four this afternoon.  
☐ court ☐ caught ☐ field ☐ place
- 57 My best friend is always very ..... He never gets cross or grumpy.  
☐ good natured ☐ good natural ☐ good nature ☐ well natured

- 58 All's football team is not very good. They usually lose in the first ..... of the competition.  
☐ number ☐ final ☐ round ☐ cup
- 59 She graduated from Cairo university with a ..... in history.  
☐ temperature ☐ licence ☐ grade ☐ degree
- 60 I took many notes because the lecturer spoke very quickly. A synonym for lecturer here is .....  
☐ role model ☐ assistant ☐ teacher ☐ physicist

- 61 Egypt enters teams into many different international .....  
☐ rounds ☐ courts ☐ Grand Slam ☐ tournaments
- 62 My sister is never ..... and always spends a lot of time explaining my homework to me.  
☐ impatient ☐ kind ☐ patient ☐ cheerful
- 63 I went to university to get this degree, which means I am now a ..... physicist.  
☐ lecturer ☐ award ☐ role model ☐ qualified
- 64 The Egyptian tennis player got into the final ..... of the tournament.  
☐ court ☐ Grand Slams ☐ round ☐ team
- 65 My English ..... at university inspired me to become an English teacher.  
☐ stereotype ☐ leftuce ☐ lecture ☐ lecturer
- 66 Yasmeen Moustafa is a great ..... for young female scientists in Egypt.  
☐ role model ☐ role ☐ rule ☐ ruler
- 67 It is a ..... to think that all footballers are tall and strong. Some of them are quite small.  
☐ tournament ☐ stereotype ☐ lecturer ☐ spark
- 68 Nadia is a nurse who won alan ..... in 2020 for her work during the health emergency.  
☐ award ☐ word ☐ reward ☐ rewarding
- 69 Tarek worked very hard for many years and he has now ..... as a doctor.  
☐ equality ☐ qualification ☐ quality ☐ qualified
- 70 I would like to thank our volunteers, who have all ..... a contribution in helping to make the park look so beautiful.  
☐ got ☐ taken ☐ made ☐ done
- 71 Albert Einstein is perhaps the most famous ..... the world has known.  
☐ physical ☐ physicist ☐ physics ☐ physic
- 72 Tarek's little brother is often ..... He sometimes hides his father's phone!  
☐ well behaved ☐ kind ☐ naughty ☐ patient
- 73 Mona is often ..... before lunch. Once she's eaten, she's quite cheerful again!  
☐ cruel ☐ patience ☐ patient ☐ grumpy
- 74 There are few women in the highest ..... of the organization.  
☐ spans ☐ ranks ☐ tanks ☐ banks
- 75 For a child from the ..... a trip to the city was a great adventure.  
☐ lectures ☐ missions ☐ ranks ☐ suburbs
- 76 They held a number of events to raise money for the local community .....  
☐ associate ☐ association ☐ charitable ☐ ministry
- 77 It's her first day studying science at university, so she needs to find the science .....  
☐ punishment ☐ department ☐ employment ☐ enjoyment
- 78 Do not return until you have achieved your .....  
☐ tension ☐ procession ☐ mission ☐ session
- 79 Hassan's sisters are both very ..... They are always friendly and smiling.  
☐ good natured ☐ bad natured ☐ cruel ☐ impatient



**Her story**

- or prize.
- ⑩A ..... Grand Slams round tournament  
⑪There's no doubt that Jana is ..... for the job. She is very efficient. suiting  
⑫There was a fierce ..... for the few jobs available. suitability  
⑬combination competition collection contamination  
⑭It was a positive match. The performance was ..... imprisoned  
⑮impressive impressed impression impressively  
⑯Production standards are ..... high. impress  
⑰impression impressed degree licence  
⑱What ..... did you get from your university? quality learning  
⑲grade encouraged foreign languages at school. form learning  
⑳We were encouraged ..... to learn good behaviour  
㉑to learning well-behaved good-behaved  
㉒She was a thoughtful, kind, and ..... girl. carry  
㉓well behaviour work than it used to be. make  
㉔Nowadays, it's harder to ..... a maths degree from Cairo University. get  
㉕do older brother has been ..... rewarded  
㉖My older brother has been ..... many other people. awarded inspected  
㉗word A lot of his works ..... inspired aspired  
㉘installed of your son. inspired inspected  
㉙You must be very ..... of your son. bride proud  
㉚pour first and only woman ..... a new school for pilots. to joining  
㉛She was the first and only woman ..... to join joining  
㉜Ma: 'Look at all the work I've done, aren't you impressed?' Jana: ..... I am being amazed!  
㉝I am amazing! much exercise to keep fit. amazed makes  
㉞I suggest that Ali ..... much exercise to keep fit. do make  
㉟does the ship. to leave to left  
㊱I was the first person ..... the ship. whom left to leave  
㊲to leaving to represent my country at the Olympics. association  
㊳It is a great ..... to represent my country at the Olympics. shame worthwhile  
㊴honour for children of different age groups. games  
㊵There will be a painting ..... for children of different age groups. article competition  
㊶You'd ..... well to take some professional advice on this matter. do make  
㊷get give
- كتاب قواعد المذاكرة  
للثانوية العامة
- PLANTS  
30  
مذكرات



# Affirmation

They had watched TV.  
 Jana had prepared dinner.

الشاعل + had + P.P.

They hadn't watched TV.  
 Jana hadn't prepared dinner.

الشاعل + hadn't + P.P.

Had Jana prepared dinner?  
 Yes, she had.

الشاعل + Had + P.P...?

الشاعل + had + been + P.P.

TV had been watched by them.  
 Dinner had been prepared by Jana.

## Passive

### Past Perfect الماضي التام

يستخدم لترتيب الأحداث فيكون الحدث الأول ماضي والآخر ماضي بسيط.  
 I had locked my flat before that I left.  
 After she had cooked, she set the table.

By 2015, we had published our first book.

#### Key words

After + ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط

After he had read the novel, he watched TV.  
 After reading the novel, he watched TV.

Having read the novel, he watched TV.

After he saw the accident, he fainted.



As soon as he'd eaten his meal, he drank tea.

I didn't swim because I had forgotten my swimming suit.  
 She didn't buy anything as the shop had been closed.

before + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام

Before he watched TV, he had read the novel.

Before watching TV, he had read the novel.

by the time + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام

By the time I arrived, the thief had escaped.

by + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام

By 2015, we had published our first book.

until + ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام

He didn't park until he had found a place.

no sooner + had + scarcely + hardly + P.P. + ... than + when + when + (V + ed)

had + الشاعل

They had no sooner finished studying than they went to bed.  
 No sooner had they finished studying than they went to bed.  
 They had hardly finished painting our new house when we moved into it.  
 Scarcely had they finished studying when they went to bed.

يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية في حالة وجود كلمة تدل على الماضي:

I wish + ماضي تام + ماضي تام + ماضي تام

I wish Toka had studied well last year.

I would rather he had come yesterday.

When we arrived, the film had already started.

It was only when I had done my homework that I went to bed.





He watched TV before that he had done his homework.  
He had done his homework after that he watched TV.

## When

ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط  
ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام  
ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط  
ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط

When I arrived at the station, the train had left.  
When I had arrived at the station, the train had left.  
When I arrived, the train left.  
When I fell, I was playing football.

في الماضي

الزمن

فاعل + had been + V + ing.

They had been studying English all night.  
Ali had been travelling to America all year.

فاعل + hadn't been + V + ing.

They hadn't been studying English all night.  
Ali hadn't been travelling to America all year.

فاعل + had + been + V + ing.

Had Ali been travelling to America all year?  
Yes, he had. No, he hadn't.

مفعول + had + been + P.P.

English had been studied all night.

Key words

## Past Perfect Continuous

الماضي المستمر

الماضي المستمر

Question

Negative

Affirmation

all... (نت)

for

since

حوال

لدة

منذ

الكلمات الدالة (كل الروابط التي تأتي مع الماضي التام بالإضافة الي)

After he had been studying all day, he slept.  
He was tired because he had been working in the farm all day.  
When we visited my cousins in Canada, they had been living there for six months.  
He was covered in paint. He had been painting the room since we left.

## Uses

استخدم الماضي التام المستمر ليعبر عن حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث آخر

After Jana had been studying English from seven to nine, she slept.

حالات لا يمكن استخدام الماضي التام المستمر واستخدم الماضي التام.

know - believe - owe - want - understand - wish - like - dislike - love - hate - prefer - enjoy - realize

We were good friends. We had known each other for 10 years.

لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التي لا تستغرق عادة فترة طويلة في حدوثها.

She was late for the meeting because her car had broken down.

إذا ذكرنا مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر واستخدم الماضي التام.

When I met Ali, he had finished typing 3 reports.

He had drunk five cups of tea before leaving.

استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل:

after / before / when + will + do

I'll go to bed after I do (have done) my homework.

As soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London, she will call me.

won't + do

He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.

He didn't come until I had phoned him.

في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد - (after - before - until - since) يأتي بعد V + ing

Having + P.P.

Toka had slept most of the way since leaving Alex.  
I had done my homework before watching TV.  
After doing his homework, he watched TV.  
Having done his homework, he watched TV.

ولكن لاحظ:

لاحظ



المبني للمعنود والمبني للمجهول في الصيغة النشطة:

**Having** + P.P. OR **Having been** + P.P. (Passive)

Having arrested the thief, the police took him to prison. (active)  
Having been arrested, the thief was taken to prison. (Passive)

in - by - until - since

**in** : ماضي بسيطة - ماضي معنود  
**by** : ماضي بسيطة - ماضي معنود  
**until** : ماضي بسيطة - ماضي معنود  
**since** : ماضي بسيطة - ماضي معنود

▶ In 2000, I studied English.  
▶ In 2025, I will study English.  
▶ By 2000, I had studied English.  
▶ By 2025, I will have finished my studies.  
▶ Until 2000, I hadn't studied English.  
▶ Since 2000, I have studied English.

لا بد من مراعاة تسلسل الأزمنة.  
I went home and discovered that the thief had stolen my money.

لاحظ أن السرقة أول حدث في الجملة لذا يوضع في الماضي التام  
يمكننا القول أن غالبا ما يكون الحدث بعد الأفعال التالية في زمن الماضي التام.  
(remembered - found out - discovered - realized)

لاحظ أشكال الماضي البسيط مع:

until - till

didn't + inf.

wasn't / weren't + اسم

wasn't / weren't + P.P (Passive)

wouldn't + inf.

No one + التصريف الثاني للفعل

had + P.P فاعل

- I didn't leave home until my mother had come.
  - He wasn't sad until he had met his wife.
  - I wasn't promoted until I had increased my target.
  - I wouldn't leave the office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.
  - No one left the office until they had finished all tasks.
- لاحظ أننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل until (تكون حرف جر):  
I waited in the park until I found a vacant place.

يمكننا استخدام (for - since) مع الماضي التام.

- I met Mai. I hadn't met her since 2020.
- After I did my homework, I slept.

Her story

لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر والماضي التام المستمر:

- I was doing my homework all day yesterday.
- I had been doing my homework all day yesterday before I slept.

لاحظ استخدام because في الماضي في الأمثلة التالية:

- I didn't swim because I had forgotten my swimming suit.
- I couldn't answer the phone because I was having a shower.
- I felt very tired because I had been working all day.

لاحظ الاختلاف في المعنى:

- When Ali arrived, we had dinner. وصل علي وتناولنا العشاء.
- When Ali had arrived, we had dinner. وصل علي أولا ثم تناولنا العشاء.
- When Ali arrived, we had had dinner. تناولنا العشاء أولا ثم وصل علي.
- When Ali arrived, we were having dinner. وصل علي أثناء تناولنا العشاء.

## Exercises on Structure

- The train ..... before we arrived at the station.  
a) had left b) has left c) was leaving d) will leave
- Mr Ali ..... at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.  
a) has worked b) is working c) will have worked d) had been working
- The tourists ..... a camel before they went to Egypt.  
a) have never seen b) had never seen c) had never see d) had been never seen
- After he had examined the athlete, the doctor .... him permission to join the competition.  
a) gave b) given c) had given d) gives
- We ..... for nearly an hour before the bus finally came.  
a) had been waiting b) had waited c) have been waiting d) have waited
- I ..... all my water before we got to the top of the mountain.  
a) drank b) had been drunk c) had drunk d) had been drinking
- The musician Chopin ..... his first piece of music before he was eight.  
a) had been written b) has written c) had been writing d) had written
- The fields were flooded because it ..... for ten days without stopping.  
a) had been raining b) had rained c) had been rained d) was raining
- She ..... for weeks before she played the final match.  
a) has trained b) been trained c) had been trained d) had been training
- After I ..... for 20 minutes, my friend arrived and apologised to me.  
a) have been waiting b) had been waiting c) has been waiting d) was waiting
- I ..... three emails before I left the office.  
a) have sent b) had sent c) had been sending d) have been sending
- What had Fatma ..... for many years before 2021?  
a) been played b) played c) been playing d) playing
- When I returned, I was surprised to know that my brother ..... from Saudi Arabia. He gave me a wonderful present!  
a) hadn't returned b) will be returning c) hasn't returned d) had returned
- We ..... the mountain for two hours before we stopped for a rest.  
a) had been climbing b) had been climbed c) have climbed d) climb
- He ..... in Alex for two years and when his mother died, he moved to Cairo.  
a) has lived b) had lived c) has been living d) had been living



- As soon as I ..... her telephone number, I tried to call her.  
 a had been knowing b was knowing c knew d have known
- I went home and discovered that my money .....  
 a had been stolen b had stolen c had been stealing d was being stolen
- By 2020, I ..... a new house in my village.  
 a built b have built c will build d had built
- ..... arrested the thief, the police took him to prison.  
 a On being b On c Having been d Having
- ..... arrested, the thief was taken to prison.  
 a While b On c Having been d Having

Don't get confused

### تمارين موقع لولجمان و بك المعرفة

- Before I returned home, my brother ..... prepared all the dishes we like most. The food was really delicious.  
 a has already b had already c was already d hadn't
- Having ..... our bags, we travelled to Marsa Matrouh.  
 a preparing b had prepared c to prepare d prepared
- I thanked my friend after the problem .....  
 a has been solved b had been solved c had solved d has solved
- Security measures ..... before the Prime Minister visited the factory.  
 a has been taken b had been taken c had taken d has taken
- I met my friend Tamer yesterday. I ..... him since we were in Alexandria last summer.  
 a hadn't met b haven't met c was meeting d didn't meet
- When I returned home, I realized that I ..... my mobile phone at school.  
 a have forgotten b had forgotten c am forgetting d forgot
- As soon as I saw the accident, I ..... the ambulance.  
 a phone b will phone c had phoned d phoned
- As soon as I heard about Marwa's accident, I ..... to the hospital.  
 a was hurrying b had hurried c hurried d am hurrying
- I didn't go to school until I ..... breakfast.  
 a have b had c have had d had had
- They were shocked to discover that someone ..... their friend's car.  
 a has hit b had hit c was hitting d hits
- I returned the book to the library when I ..... it.  
 a will read b had read c was reading d have read
- I ..... till my friend arrives to go to the club together.  
 a left b didn't leave c won't leave d am leaving
- I realized that I ..... a silly mistake in the exam when I returned home and checked my answers.  
 a have made b had made c am making d made
- I ..... my own computer for 3 years before anything went wrong with it.  
 a had had b had c have had d was having
- ..... eaten, he went out for a walk.  
 a After b On c While d Having
- As soon as I arrived at the cinema, the film .....  
 a will start b has started c started d

### Her story

- Scarcely ..... a new job when he decided to move into a new flat.  
 a he had found b was he found c had he found d have he found

Don't get confused

### تمارين متنوعة

- Having ..... the shopping, my mother started to prepare lunch.  
 a do b doing c been done d done
- Aya watched television after ..... her lesson.  
 a has written b writing c wrote d had written
- No sooner ..... the noise than we rushed to the spot.  
 a had we heard b did we heard c we had heard d we did hear
- He'd ..... come into the room when he died.  
 a better b rather c hardly d prefer
- I'd rather you ..... your car here yesterday.  
 a don't park b didn't park c haven't parked d hadn't parked
- Hardly had he fastened his safety belt when the plane ..... off.  
 a had taken b took c has taken d is taking
- Until 2018, I ..... a new house in my village.  
 a won't have built b haven't built c won't build d hadn't built
- I couldn't do the shopping ..... all shops had been closed.  
 a until b since c before d after
- They ..... able to come until I had called them.  
 a aren't b didn't c won't d weren't
- I didn't meet my friend today ..... he had left early.  
 a before b until c as d after
- ..... in the park until I found a vacant place.  
 a waited b didn't wait c won't wait d never waited
- That was the most difficult position I ..... in.  
 a have ever been b had been never c had ever been d ever was
- No one ..... the office until they had finished all tasks.  
 a didn't leave b won't leave c had left d left
- After ....., she felt lonely.  
 a her husband has died b her husband's death c her husband was dying d had died

Don't get confused

### ماذا تعني هذه الجمل

- I didn't go to the club until I had had lunch. This means: .....  
 a First I went to the club, then I had lunch  
 b I had lunch after going to the club  
 c First, I had lunch, then I went to the club  
 d I had lunch while going to the club
- When I went to the station, the train had left. This means: .....  
 a First, I arrived at the station, then, the train left  
 b The train had left before I reached the station  
 c I actually caught the train  
 d The train moved while I was getting into it



- Her story
- Adjectives الصفات**
- الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتي الصفة قبل الموصوف أو بعد الأفعال التالية:  
**V. to be - look - seem - sound - appear - go - get - come - become - stay - feel - taste - smell - touch - fall - grow - turn - how**
- He bought a **new** flat. She was a **clever** student. He is **lazy**.  
 Toka seems **ill**. He gets **tired** quickly. They are **clever**.  
 لا تتغير الصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أو جمعاً، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً.  
 لاحظ أن الصفة قد تكون:
- He is **clever**. She is **clever**. They are **clever**.  
 لاحظ أن الصفة قد تكون:
- hope (hopeful - hopeless) / friend (friendly) suffix تستخرج من اسم بإضافة لاحقة  
 interesting - exciting - boring - amazing اسم فاعل  
 interested - excited - bored - amazed اسم مفعول  
 اسم يستخدم كصفة (لا يجمع الاسم في هذه الحالة).  
 world news - school girl - girls school - horse race.  
 رقم ويعد اسم فيكون الرقم صفة للأسم  
 a forty-year man - a two-day trip - a ten-day break  
 لاحظ أن يمكننا عكس الصفة بإضافة بادئة Prefix
- un im in il dis ir  
 lucky unlucky polite impolite correct incorrect legal illegal loyal disloyal regular irregular  
 يمكننا تقسيم الصفات من حيث القوة إلى نوعين:  
 صفات عادية (يمكننا أن يأتي قبلها كلمة very)  
 صفات قوية = صفة عادية + very (لا يمكن أن يأتي قبلها كلمة very)  
 hot cold bad large tired angry  
 boiling freezing awful huge exhausted furious  
 He had been working all day. He was **very tired** (exhausted).  
 Because of his awful marks, his parents were **very angry** (furious).  
 من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين:  
 صفة قصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد عند النطق مثل:  
 big slow short tall fast hot  
 صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند النطق مثل:  
 expensive comfortable dangerous valuable wonderful important  
 تنقسم الصفات من حيث الدرجة إلى ثلاث درجات:  
 1 الصفة العادية (Positive degree) الغرض منها الوصف وليس المقارنة.  
 2 صفة المقارنة (Comparative degree) وتستخدم في المقارنة بين اثنين.  
 3 صفة التفضيل (Superlative degree) صفة التفضيل للمقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين.

Don't get confused

Using linking words in the past and in the present

- 99 I'll go to bed after I ..... my homework. (Choose two Answers)  
 a did b was doing c had done d have done e do  
 99 As soon as she ..... in London, she will call me. (Choose two Answers)  
 a arrives b had arrived c has arrived d arrived e was arriving  
 99 He ..... come until I phone him.  
 a doesn't b didn't c won't d don't  
 99 He watched TV after he ..... his homework.  
 a doing b was doing c has done d had done  
 99 After I have finished my work, I ..... home.  
 a going to go b go c will go d went  
 99 We won't be able to live on Mars until we ..... enough water there.  
 a will find b have found c will be finding d found

أحرص على اقتناء سلسلة العملاقة في اللغة الإنجليزية



## Adjectives الصفات

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتي الصفة قبل الموصوف أو بعد الأفعال التالية:

**V. to be - look - seem - sound - appear - go - get - come - become - stay - feel - taste - smell - touch - fall - grow - turn - how**

- He bought a **new** flat. She was a **clever** student. He is **lazy**.  
 Toka seems **ill**. He gets **tired** quickly. They are **clever**.  
 لا تتغير الصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أو جمعاً، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً.  
 لاحظ أن الصفة قد تكون:

hope (hopeful - hopeless) / friend (friendly)	suffix تستخرج من اسم بإضافة لاحقة
interesting - exciting - boring - amazing	اسم فاعل
interested - excited - bored - amazed	اسم مفعول
اسم يستخدم كصفة (لا يجمع الاسم في هذه الحالة).	
world news - school girl - girls school - horse race.	رقم ويعد اسم فيكون الرقم صفة للأسم
a forty-year man - a two-day trip - a ten-day break	

لاحظ أن يمكننا عكس الصفة بإضافة بادئة Prefix

un	im	in	il	dis	ir
lucky	polite	correct	legal	loyal	regular
unlucky	impolite	incorrect	illegal	disloyal	irregular

يمكننا تقسيم الصفات من حيث القوة إلى نوعين:

صفات عادية (يمكننا أن يأتي قبلها كلمة very)

صفات قوية = صفة عادية + very (لا يمكن أن يأتي قبلها كلمة very)

hot	cold	bad	large	tired	angry
boiling	freezing	awful	huge	exhausted	furious

- He had been working all day. He was **very tired** (exhausted).  
 Because of his awful marks, his parents were **very angry** (furious).

من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين:

صفة قصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد عند النطق مثل:

big	slow	short	tall	fast	hot
-----	------	-------	------	------	-----

صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند النطق مثل:

expensive	comfortable	dangerous	valuable	wonderful	important
-----------	-------------	-----------	----------	-----------	-----------

تنقسم الصفات من حيث الدرجة إلى ثلاث درجات:

- الصفة العادية (Positive degree) الغرض منها الوصف وليس المقارنة.
- صفة المقارنة (Comparative degree) وتستخدم في المقارنة بين اثنين.
- صفة التفضيل (Superlative degree) صفة التفضيل للمقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين.





## Comparative degree

lucky	محفوظ
happy	سعيد

nice	لطيف
rich	غني

وهي الدرجة المادية أو البسيطة التي تبين درجة الصفة مثل:  
تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي تعبر عن المساواة في الصفة.

as + صفة + as

Toka is **as clever as** Jana.

Ahmed is **as strong as** a horse.

تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي تعبر عن عدم المساواة في الصفة.

not as / so + صفة + as

Ali is **not as clever as** Ahmed.

He is **not as (so) rich as** his brother.

## Comparative degree

تستخدم المقارنة بين اثنين عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على شخص أو شيء وتكون كالاتي:

more / less + صفة + er + than

Ali is **taller than** Ahmed.

Ahmed is **shorter than** Ali.

more / less + صفة + than

Mona is **more beautiful than** Nada.

Nada is **less beautiful than** Mona.

## Superlative degree

وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على مجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء وتكون كالاتي:

The + صفة قصيرة + est

Ali is **the tallest** student in the class.

She is **the shortest** one.

The most / The least + صفة طويلة + the

Mona is **the most beautiful** girl I have ever seen.

## short adjectives

Positive	الصفات الصغيرة
happy	سعيد
heavy	ثقيل
pretty	جميل
short	قصير

### Comparative

happier	than	happiest
heavier	than	heaviest
prettier	than	prettiest
shorter	than	shortest

### Superlative

the	happiest
the	heaviest
the	prettiest
the	shortest

## long adjectives

### Positive

dangerous	خطير
important	مهم
valuable	قيم
wonderful	ملفت

more / less + dangerous / important / valuable / wonderful + than

### المقارنة

### Superlative

the most	the least	dangerous
the most	the least	important
the most	the least	valuable
the most	the least	wonderful

### بعض الصفات الشاذة

#### Comparative

better	أفضل
worse	أسوأ
more	أكثر
less	أقل
farther	أبعد
further	أكثر / إضافي

#### Superlative

best	الأحسن
worst	الأسوأ
most	الأكثر
least	الأقل
farthest	الأبعد
furthest	أكثر / إضافي

Ali is **better than** Ahmed.

→ Ahmed is **worse than** Ali.

لاحظ عند وضع the قبل الصفة تتحول إلى اسم جمع ويأتي بعدها فعل جمع و يأتي بعدها (are - were - have - inf.)

poor	فقير	the poor	الفقراء
brave	شجاع	the brave	الشجعان
disabled	معاق	the disabled	العاقين
rich	غني	the rich	الأغنياء

لاحظ أن الصفة بمفردها لا يأتي قبلها (a-an) أما إذا جاءت قبل اسم مفرد يعد يأتي قبلها (a-an)

This house is **new**.

It is **a new house**.

This woman is **old**.

She is **an old woman**.

لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ed والتي تنتهي بـ ing:

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ed كصفة لمستقبل الحدث  
نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ing كصفة للمسبب للحدث (تستخدم مع العاقل وغير العاقل للوصف)

bored - excited - amazed - interested

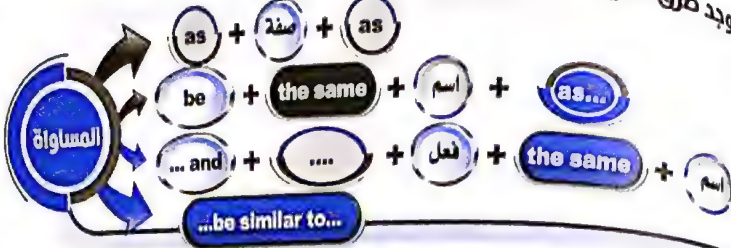
boring - exciting - amazing - interesting

### لاحظ ترتيب الصفات:

opinion	size	age	shape	colour	material
الرأي	الحجم	العمر	الشكل	اللون	المادة الخام
nice	small	old	round	red	iron

I bought a **strong big round black wooden** table.





Toka is as old as Jana.  
= Toka is the same age as Jana.  
= Toka and Jana are the same age.  
يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفة القصيرة:

Ali is less fat than Adel.

يمكن أن نحدد مقدار صفة المقارنة بأن يسبقها كلمات مثل:  
much - a lot - a bit - a little - slightly

Toka is much more intelligent than Jana.



The more I study, the higher marks I get.  
The harder you study, the more marks you get.

Mai is the most beautiful girl in our family.  
⇒ No girl in our family is more beautiful than Mai.  
(No girl)

The Nile is the longest river in the world.  
⇒ No river in the world is as long as the Nile.  
(as ... as)

No man in our village is as reliable as Ahmed.  
⇒ Ahmed is the most reliable man in our village.  
(Ahmed ...)

استعمال الصفات مع ever:  
I have ever + اسم + is the + صفة حالة ثانية + اسم + P.P.  
Toka is the cleverest girl I have ever seen.  
Jana is the most beautiful girl I have ever met.

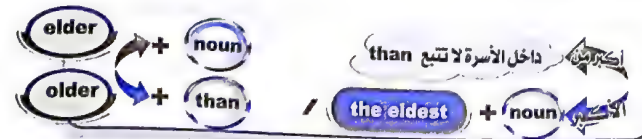
استعمال الصفات مع never:  
I have never + P.P. + اسم + حالة ثانية + اسم + than اسم  
I have never met a more beautiful girl than Jana.  
I have never met a girl as beautiful as Jana.

لاحظ هذا التركيب:  
the + الصفة + er + of the two + اسم  
Toka is the taller of the two girls.

لاحظ استخدام (most) بدون (the) وهنا تكون بمعنى (very):  
I love all my family, but my mum most of all.  
I love all my classmates, but I love Ibrahim most.

بعد صفات الملكية يستخدم التفضيل (best - worst - least - most) بدون the:  
His most popular book is Giants.  
Her best novel is "Oliver".

لاحظ استخدام (older / oldest) مع الأشخاص والأشياء ولكن نستخدم (elder / eldest) عند المقارنة داخل نطاق الأسرة:



He is my elder brother.  
Toka is older than Mai.  
نستخدم (farther) عند مقارنة المسافات ولكن نستخدم (further) بمعنى أكثر من ذلك:

Aswan is farther than Beni Suef.  
Have you anything further to add?

لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how واسم بعد what

How + صفة	How old	How much	How heavy	How high	How tall
= What + اسم	What age	What price	What weight	What height	

expensive - cheap	far - near	big - small	young - old
price	distance	size	age

الصفات القوية يكون معناها أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية:

عادية Ordinary	قوية Strong	عادية Ordinary	قوية Strong
clever ماهر	brilliant رائع	old قديم	ancient عتيق
angry غاضب	furious غضبان جداً	frightening مخيف	terrifying مرعب
bad سيء	terrible فظيع	hot ساخن	boiling في حالة غليان
big كبير	enormous ضخم	tired متعب	exhausted مرهق
happy سعيد	delighted مسرور	unusual غير عادي	incredible خيالي

لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات العادية:  
very - rather - fairly - quite - extremely - little  
Mr Ahmed is a very good teacher.  
I'm very (extremely) tired.

لاحظ أن quite / fairly تعطي معنى إيجابي بينما rather تعطي معنى سلبي:  
It is quite cold. (I can bear it.)  
It is rather cold. (I can't bear it.)

لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات القوية:  
absolutely - completely - entirely - totally  
The man was completely exhausted.  
Mr Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة:  
really - pretty  
This building is really big / enormous.

لاحظ استخدام (enough) بعد الصفة والظرف وتعطي معنى سلبي:  
الظرف وتعطي معنى سلبي:  
He is too weak to lift this bag.

He is strong enough to lift this bag.



- 1 I don't think this winter is ..... last winter.  
 a as cold as b as cold c so cold d colder
- 2 This man isn't ..... Mr Ali, perhaps shorter.  
 a tall as b so tall so c as tall so d so tall as
- 3 Nobody here is ..... Peter.  
 a efficient b as efficient as c most efficient than d as efficient
- 4 The man I saw was not ..... that one.  
 a as tall so b so tall so c so tall as d so tall
- 5 She looked ..... and ran away from the dog.  
 a fright b frightened c frightening d frighten
- 6 I think little Jenny ..... today. She can go to school.  
 a seem better b looks better c seems best d looks best
- 7 The scene was horrifying. The spectators were .....  
 a horrifyingly b horrify c horrifying d horrified
- 8 The idea sounds .....  
 a interests b interest c interested d interesting
- 9 Do you want ..... house?  
 a big b a big c a biggest d biggest
- 10 She read as ..... as she could.  
 a much b many c more d less
- 11 Which of these is an adjective?  
 a hard b hardly c harden d hardship
- 12 You were ..... to escape unharmed.  
 a unfortunately b fortunately c fortunate d unfortunate

- 13 This exam seems ..... than the previous one; you don't have to worry.  
 a more difficult b the easiest c easier d much difficult
- 14 Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really .....  
 a younger b older c youngest d oldest
- 15 Your homework is ..... than last week; you seem lazy!  
 a better b worse c good d bad
- 16 Which is ..... in summer: Cairo or Alexandria?  
 a hotter than b as hot c hottest d hotter
- 17 Yesterday was hot and today is .....  
 a hottest b hotter than c hotter d a hotter
- 18 This book was ..... than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.  
 a bad b best c worst d worse
- 19 The students all feel ..... now that the exams have finished.  
 a the happiest b happier c more happy d happiest
- 20 Our football team is ..... yours.  
 a better than b the better c best than d as good as

- 21 Please, tell me something ..... than this old joke.  
 a interesting b less interesting c more interesting d the most interesting
- 22 I have ..... time than he does.  
 a bigger b least c most d less
- 23 Your problem is not difficult. It's ..... than ours.  
 a easier b more easy c easiest d most easy
- 24 What a pity! She lives so far. I wish she lived .....  
 a nearest b nearer c more near d most near
- 25 This car is very good, but ours is .....  
 a much better b more better c much best d less best
- 26 There was a big crowd. It was ..... than ever.  
 a crowdest b more crowded c most crowded d crowder

- 27 What is the ..... mountain in Europe?  
 a highest b high c highly d much high
- 28 Is the Great Wall of China still ..... man-made structure in the world?  
 a the longer b longest c the longest d much longer
- 29 What is ..... dish in Egypt?  
 a the spiciest b spiciest c much spicy d most spiciest
- 30 The Egyptian museum is one of the ..... places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.  
 a more popular b less popular c least popular d most popular
- 31 In my opinion, it was the ..... meal I've ever eaten!  
 a best b good c better d worse
- 32 Meals with meat are usually ..... meals in restaurants.  
 a more expensive than b expensive than c expensive d the most expensive
- 33 This is ..... month.  
 a hot b hottest c the hotter d the hottest
- 34 The Nile is ..... river in Africa.  
 a longer than b the longest c longer one d longest than
- 35 Their house is ..... from the main road.  
 a the farther b farther than c the farthest d farthest
- 36 What was the ..... event in your life?  
 a happiest b happier c more happy d most happy
- 37 It was ..... music I have ever heard.  
 a more beautiful b less beautiful c the most beautiful d most beautiful
- 38 That's the biggest building I've .....  
 a never seen b ever saw c ever seen d never saw
- 39 Of all the problems she has faced, this one is by far .....  
 a too badly b the worst c worse d badly
- 40 The bridge over the valley is built on a ..... scale than the one over the river.  
 a big b bigger c biggest d the biggest
- 41 When the bus plunged off the bridge, it was the ..... experience of my life. We were lucky that nobody was hurt.  
 a most shocking b shocking c more shocking d less shocking



1. This book is not as interesting as the other one.  
 a) more interesting b) the most interesting c) much interesting d) the interesting
2. This book is better than the other one.  
 a) in b) much c) more d) it is better
3. The new book is better than the old one.  
 a) too b) much c) better d) best
4. The new book is much better than the old one.  
 a) much better b) more c) better d) best
5. The new book is as good as the old one.  
 a) better b) a better c) the better d) a kind
6. The new book is as good as the old one.  
 a) better b) the better c) the best d) best
7. The new book is as good as the old one.  
 a) too b) much c) better d) much
8. The new book is as good as the old one.  
 a) a few b) the fewest c) most d) the less
9. This is the best of the brothers.  
 a) the b) the taller c) the tallest d) taller
10. This is the best of the brothers.  
 a) the best b) the better c) better d) best
11. Raise your voice, please. I can't hear you.  
 a) hardly b) hard c) harden d) hardness
12. This is the most interesting in cartoons.  
 a) few b) many c) the most d) most
13. The writer's new book is his most popular book.  
 a) popular b) most popular c) most d) more
14. The shirt wasn't the same price as I had thought at first.  
 a) as b) some c) most d) more
15. Ali is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as him.  
 a) he b) him c) he is d) her
16. He tried hard to find a job, but he had no luck.  
 a) tried hard b) tried hardly c) hardly tried d) hard tried
17. You need to be absolutely tall to be a good basketball player.  
 a) absolutely b) extremely c) completely d) entirely
18. He bought the fastest car.  
 a) fastest b) fast c) a faster d) faster
19. In my opinion, fish tastes a lot better than oysters.  
 a) lots of b) lot of c) a lot d) lot
20. Which is one of the most traditional dishes in the UK?  
 a) less b) more c) the most d) most
21. He speaks English as well as he speaks Arabic.  
 a) best b) bad c) good d) well



☞ Hanoi city isn't as big as Ho Chi Minh city. This means .....

- a Ho Chi Minh city is smaller than Hanoi city.
- b Ho Chi Minh city is bigger than Hanoi city.
- c Hanoi city is bigger than Ho Chi Minh city.
- d Ho Chi Minh city is as big as Hanoi city.

☞ Jane is a better cook than Daisy. This means .....

- a Daisy can't cook as good as Jane.
- b Daisy isn't a cook as good as Jane.
- c Daisy can cook as badly as Jane.
- d Daisy can't cook as well as Jane.

☞ Most of Mai's friends work less hard than her. This means .....

- a Mai works more hard than most of her friends do.
- b Mai works more hardly than most of her friends do.
- c Mai works harder than most of her friends do.
- d Mai works as hard as most of her friends do.

☞ Susan is more attractive than her sister. This means .....

- a Susan's sister looks attractive
- b Susan's sister is not as attractive as her
- c Susan is not so attractive as her sister
- d Susan looks more attractively than her sister

☞ My kitchen is smaller than yours. This means .....

- a Your kitchen is bigger than mine.
- b My kitchen is as big as yours.
- c Your kitchen is as small as mine.
- d All are correct.

☞ Mike is a more careful driver than his brother. This means .....

- a Mike drives more carefully than his brother.
- b Mike drives less carefully than his brother.
- c Mike's brother drives less carefully than him.
- d A & C are correct.

☞ Jane can swim further than I can. This means .....

- a I can't swim as far as Jane.
- b Jane can swim as far as I can.
- c I can swim further than Jane.
- d A & C are correct.

☞ The problem is difficult to solve. This means .....

- a It is difficult problem to solve.
- b It is a problem difficult solve.
- c It is difficult to solve the problem.
- d It is difficult solve the problem.

☞ Ali and Ahmed are the same .....

- a old
- b tall
- c age
- d high

هنا نختار اسم وليس صفة بعد كلمة the same

☞ By 2010, I ..... many European countries.

- a have visited
- b had visited
- c will have visited
- d visited

نختار زمن الماضي التام مع وجود by وسنة في الماضي.

☞ Heba was ..... exhausted after cleaning the house all day.

- a very
- b quite
- c completely
- d a bit

لاحظ استخدام completely وليس very أو أي ظرف آخر بسبب وجود صفة قوية exhausted.

☞ No sooner ..... TV, than I went to bed.

- a had I watched
- b I had watched
- c did I watched
- d I watched

لاحظ مع وجود No sooner في بداية الجملة نستخدم زمن الماضي التام في صيغة السؤال.

☞ I ..... for three hours before the doctor arrived.

- a have waited
- b had waited
- c had been waiting
- d waited

مع وجود before وماضي بسيط نختار زمن الماضي التام المستمر لوجود for وفترة زمنية.

☞ Today is hot but yesterday was .....

- a hot
- b much hot
- c hottest
- d hotter

نختار هنا صفة من الدرجة الثانية بالرغم من عدم وجود than لوجود مقارنة بين حالة الطقس في اليومين.

☞ Having ..... my homework, I went to bed.

- a had finished
- b been finished
- c finishing
- d finished

لاحظ عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ Having فنختار التصريف الثالث للفعل.

☞ Having ..... my car looked like a new one.

- a repaired
- b been repaired
- c had repaired
- d was repaired

عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ Having في حالة المبنى للمجهول فنختار been + p.p.

☞ Perhaps Ahmed is tall, but Alaa is .....

- a more taller
- b tallest
- c much taller
- d few taller

نختار هنا صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية ويمكن أن يأتي قبلها much للتعبير عن درجة المقارنة.

☞ I ..... two books by the time I feel asleep.

- a read
- b had read
- c had been reading
- d read

نختار زمن الماضي التام لوجود by the time متبوعة بالماضي البسيط ولا نختار الماضي التام المستمر لذكر عدد مرات تكرار الحدث two books.

☞ After ..... dinner with their friends, they left.

- a having
- b had
- c had had
- d had been

مع عدم وجود الفاعل بعد After نختار فعل مضاف له ing ولا نختار الماضي التام.

☞ The harder you study, the ..... marks you get.

- a high
- b height
- c higher
- d highest

لاحظ استخدام صفة مقارنة er بالرغم من وجود the في صيغة كلما ، كلما.

☞ He gave me a /an ..... look; I was petrified.

- a frightening
- b terrified
- c frightened
- d scared

لاحظ اختيار الصفة المنتهية بـ ing لأنها نتحدث عن المتسبب في الشعور (النظرة المخيفة) في هذه الحالة.



## ① Writing Vocabulary

especially	خصوصاً	percentage	النسبة المئوية
however	مع ذلك	the majority of	الأغلبية
In conclusion	ختاماً	with the highest number	بأعلى عدد
low number of	عدد قليل من	three-quarters	ثلاث أرباع
around half	حوالي النصف	half the number of	نصف عدد
similar numbers of	أعداد مماثلة من	less than a third	أقل من الثلث
report	تقرير	fewer than	أقل من
graph	رسم بياني	only a few	فقط القليل
nearly	تقريباً	in other words	بعبارة أخرى
over three-quarters	أكثر من ثلاث أرباع	rather than	بدلاً من
third	ثلث	little by little	ليتاً لشيئاً

It can be seen that there is a significant difference

The most surprising thing about the figures is

That may reflect the fact that

It is especially interesting to note that

يمكن ملاحظة أن هناك فرقاً كبيراً  
أشبه الأكثر إثارة للدهشة في الأرقام هو  
قد يعكس ذلك حقيقة أن  
من المثير للاهتمام بشكل خاص ملاحظة أن

## ② Vocabulary for Translation

reform	إصلاح	seek to	يسعى إلى	contribute to	يساهم في
pollution	التلوث	vital role	دور حيوي	civilized	مدني
odds - hardships	الصعاب	awareness	الوعي	gap	الفجوة
unemployment	البطالة	protect from	يحمي من	creation	إبداع
economy	الاقتصاد	solve	يحل	reject	يرفض / يرفض
tourism	السياحة	rationalize	يرشد / يقتصد	violence	العنف
progress	التقدم	a source of	مصدر	needs	احتياجات
nvest	يستثمر	stimulate	ينشط / يحفز	efforts	مجهودات
investor	مستثمر	birth control	تنظيم النسل	hinder	يعوق
vestment	الاستثمار	over population	الزيادة السكانية	knowledge	معرفة

## Chapter two

good heart	طيب القلب	a broken heart	محطم القلب / حزين	rude	رايح
hamed	يشعر بالخزي	veil	حجاب / ساتر	kind	عطوف
de	عروسه	grateful	ممتن	unused	غير مستخدم / غير معتاد
idle	شعته	shake	يهز	disappear	يختفي
une	ثروة	stir	يقرب	fight	يجارح / معركة

يرجى على اقتناء أقوى كتب  
المراجعات للثانوية العامة

## Female doctors by country

The bar graph shows the percentage of female doctors in certain given countries around the world. It can be seen that there is a very significant difference across countries, from a majority of women doctors in some countries to a small minority in others.

The country with the highest number of women doctors is Latvia, which has nearly three-quarters of female doctors, while the country with the smallest number is Japan, where less than a quarter of doctors are women.

Netherlands and Spain have very similar numbers of women doctors; around half the doctors in those countries are women. However, another European country Italy has around 10% fewer women doctors.

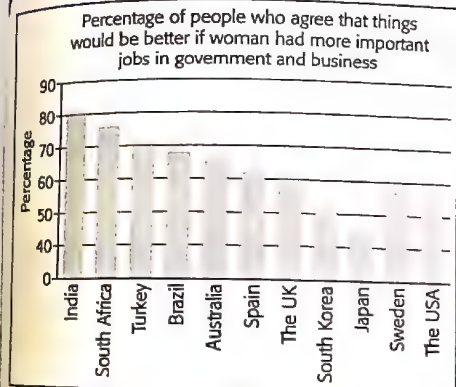
In conclusion, the most surprising thing about the figures is the big differences across different countries, which do not seem to be related to region, or size or economic development of the country. In other words, there does not seem to be any obvious pattern to the results. It is especially interesting to note the very low number of women doctors in Japan. That may reflect the stereotype that Japanese women are usually expected to look after the home, rather than work in medical or other fields.

Share of female doctors in selected countries as of 2015

Latvia	74.3%
Estonia	73.3%
Netherlands	51.7%
Spain	51.6%
United Kingdom	45.8%
Italy	40.3%
Australia	39.4%
United States	34.1%
Japan	20.3%

Source: OECD Health Statistics 2016

## Percentage of people who agree that things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business.



From the graph, it can be seen that there is a significant difference between people's opinions when asked the question in the graph. The highest number of people who agreed in India, where the majority of people (80%) thought things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business. Perhaps the most surprising thing about the figures is that over 70% of people in the less developed countries, such as South Africa and Turkey, agreed with the question. However, in some of the more developed countries such as Sweden and the USA,

fewer than 60% of the people agreed, while in South Korea, nearly half the number disagreed. It is especially interesting to note that in Japan, only 43% agreed. That may reflect the fact that Japan is a very traditional society. In conclusion, we can see that in most countries, people believe that things would be better if women had more important jobs in business or government.



- 1 When concluding an essay about cleanliness, we can use one of the following.
- Firstly, we should know what causes diseases
  - Moreover, cleanliness is a key to avoid diseases
  - To sum up, we should follow the rules of hygiene and sanitation
  - Nevertheless, we need to spread national awareness
- 2 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- Yes I'm going to return from Hurghada with my friends Rami Tamer and Adel on Friday
  - Yes, I'm going to return from Hurghada with my friends Rami, Tamer and Adel on Friday
  - Yes, I m going to return from hurgada with my friends Rami, Tamer and Adel on Friday
  - Yes, i'm going to return from Hurghada with my friends Rami, Tamer and Adel on Friday
- 3 A topic sentence.....
- sums up the central point of your paper or essay
  - tells the readers what the rest of the paragraph is about
  - indicates that you are bringing closure to a paragraph
  - gives a reader details to understand the main idea, or evidence
- 4 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- Wael did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
  - Wael, did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone
  - Wael, did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
  - Wael, did you understand Why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
- 5 When you start writing an essay about the newly located Cairo Museum, you can use.....
- Moreover, the newly located Cairo Museum shows the greatness of the Ancient Egyptian.
  - To sum up, the newly located Cairo Museum is a splendid place to visit
  - However, the newly located Cairo Museum was moved from its original location.
  - Without a doubt, the newly located Cairo Museum is a splendid place to visit.
- 6 One of the following sentences CAN'T be used when you CONCLUDE writing an essay on the merits of the internet: .....
- To sum up, the internet is one of the most useful inventions
  - In my opinion, the internet has a lot of disadvantages in case we use it badly
  - In my view, the internet is very useful to all of us
  - In conclusion, the internet has made the world a small village
- 7 You summarise the content of your essay when you .....
- develop the main idea.
  - write the elements of your essay in detail.
  - make the end open.
  - write the conclusion of your essay.
- 8 We use "However" in a paragraph or an essay to express.....
- summary
  - contrast
  - addition
  - introduction
- 9 When writing an essay or a paragraph, you start with a/an ..... sentence.
- ending
  - closing
  - introductory
  - conclusion
- 10 Your essay introduction should .....
- let the reader miss the topic.
  - include an opening hook to catch the reader's attention.
  - refer to the end.
  - ask the reader for help.
- 11 When you conclude your essay, you should .....
- review your supporting ideas.
  - ask the reader to choose the end.
  - exclude your supporting ideas.
  - refer to the sentence of introduction.

- 1 Which of the following is structurally correct?
- I won't go home until I had finished all my work.
  - I won't go home until I finished all my work.
  - I didn't go home until I have finished all my work.
  - I didn't go home until I had finished all my work.
- 2 Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
- No sooner I had typed the report, than I emailed the manager.
  - No sooner had I typed the report than I emailed the manager.
  - I had no sooner typed the report when I emailed the manager.
  - No sooner I had typed the report when I emailed the manager.
- 3 Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
- Having repaired, the car became ready for the long journey.
  - After the car had repaired, it became ready for the long journey.
  - Having been repaired, the car became ready for the long journey.
  - After the car has been repaired, it became ready for the long journey.
- 4 Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
- After she had been studied for more than 5 hours, she could finish her homework.
  - After she has been studied for more than 5 hours, she could finish her homework.
  - After she has been studying for more than 5 hours, she could finish her homework.
  - After she had been studying for more than 5 hours, she could finish her homework.
- 5 Which of the following is correctly structured?
- My car had been repaired before I arrived at the mechanic's.
  - My car had repaired before I arrived at the mechanic's.
  - My car had been repair before I arrived at the mechanic's.
  - My car had being repaired before I arrived at the mechanic's.
- 6 Which of the following sentences DOESN'T give the same meaning?
- After he had studied his lessons, he slept.
  - After studying his lessons, he slept.
  - Before he studied his lessons, he had slept.
  - Having studied his lessons, he slept.
- 7 Which of the following is correctly structured?
- As soon as I had cooked the meal, I had set the table.
  - As soon as I had cooked the meal, I set the table.
  - As soon as I had cooked the meal, I have set the table.
  - As soon as I had cooked the meal, I will set the table.
- 8 Which of the following sentences is structurally INCORRECT?
- No sooner had I returned home, than I had lunch.
  - Hardly had I returned home, when I had lunch.
  - I had scarcely returned home, when I had lunch.
  - No sooner had I returned home, then I had lunch.



- ١ The state strives to improve life conditions for its citizens in various fields.
- ٢ Education aims at creating an Egyptian citizen who is able to face the challenges of modern life.
- ٣ The freedom of doctrine and the right of citizenship, justice and equality are the pillars of modern society.
- ٤ There is no doubt that pollution has its bad effects on the environment whether man, animal or plant.
- ٥ Mothers are the cornerstone in any family. If they give up their role as housewives, there will be some unpleasant consequences.
- ٦ Tourism is one of the most important sources of national income as it brings in a lot of hard currency which is invested in plenty of projects.
- ٧ There is no doubt that teaching is the backbone of scientific progress. Without teachers, people will suffer from the darkness of ignorance.

- ١ تعمل الدولة على تحسين الظروف المعيشية لمواطنيها في مختلف المجالات.
- ٢ يهدف التعليم إلى تكوين مواطن مصري قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة الحديثة.
- ٣ إن حرية العقيدة وحق الوطن والعدالة والمساواة هي دعائم المجتمع الحديث.
- ٤ لا شك أن التلوث آثاره السيئة على البيئة سواء الإنسان أو الحيوان أو النبات.
- ٥ الأمهات هم حجر الزاوية في أي عائلة. إن تقاعدهن عن دورهن كربات بيوت، فسكن حياتهن بعض العواقب غير السارة.
- ٦ تعتبر السياحة من أهم مصادر الدخل القومي لأنها تجلب الكثير من العملات الصعبة التي يتم استثمارها في الكثير من المشاريع.
- ٧ لا شك أن التعليم هو العمود الفقري لتقدم العلم. بدون معلمي، سيعاني الناس من قلة الجهل.

- ٨ من المعروف أن الاستخدام الخاطئ لمواقع الإنترنت ووسائل التواصل الاجتماعي يهدر الوقت والجهد ويهدم الصحة.
- ٩ لا يمكن لأحد أن يهزمك أو يعرقل نجاحك طالما تتسلح بالعلم والأمل.
- ١٠ يجب ألا يعاقب الأطفال بدنياً، فهذا النوع من العقاب له تأثيراً سيئاً على حياة الطفل في المستقبل، فيجب على الآباء أن يربوا أطفالهم على الأخلاق الحميدة.
- ١١ تتخذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات القومية العملاقة كمحطات توليد الطاقة الشمسية واستصلاح الأراضي في صعيد مصر لتوفير الوظائف وتحسين الحالة المعيشية للمواطنين هناك.
- ١٢ Our daily life is filled with many challenges that requires patient, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.
- ١٣ Our daily life is filled with many challenges that require patience, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.
- ١٤ Our daily life is filled with much challenges that require patience, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.
- ١٥ Our daily life is filled with many challenges that require patience, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.

- ٨ It is good known that misusing websites and social media wastes time and effort and damages health.
- ٩ No one can't defeat you or hinder your success as long as you are armed with knowledge and hope.
- ١٠ Children should not be punished physically, as this type of punishment has a bad effect on the child's future life.
- ١١ The government is implementing many mega national projects such as solar energy stations and land reclamation in Upper Egypt.
- ١٢ Our daily life is filled with many challenges that require patience, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.
- ١٣ Our daily life is filled with many challenges that require patience, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.
- ١٤ Our daily life is filled with much challenges that require patience, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.
- ١٥ Our daily life is filled with many challenges that require patience, cooperation and hard work to overcome them.



# Exercises on Story

- 1 Future wars will..... over water supplies.  
a done b fought c occur d take part
- 2 The nurse ..... the thermometer and put it under my armpit.  
a shook b dropped c stirred d hit
- 3 I am extremely ..... to all the teachers for their help.  
a ashamed b hopeless c grateful d proud
- 4 We had to eat out all the time. It ended up costing a .....  
a loan b money c salary d fortune
- 5 The house was dark except for one ..... burning in a window.  
a candle b fire c battery d lamp
- 6 Bright moonlight shines through a thin ..... of clouds.  
a scarf b veil c carpet d vain
- 7 The ..... 's father traditionally walks with her to the groom to give her away.  
a baby b wife c widow d bride
- 8 She ought to be thoroughly ..... of herself - talking to her mother like that!  
a ashamed b rude c pretty d grateful
- 9 ..... the sauce gently until it begins to boil.  
a Skip b Drop c Hit d Stir
- 10 The teams are in ..... heart and ready for the season's matches.  
a bad b well c good d broken
- 11 ..... muscles can feel very sore when you start exercising.  
a Used b Relaxing c Unused d Use
- 12 The two girls ..... while walking home from school.  
a disappeared b appeared c turned up d ran
- 13 It takes years, maybe a lifetime, to heal a ..... heart.  
a damage b broken c good d bad
- 14 Unfair bosses and ..... customers make us unhappy on the job.  
a polite b kind c generous d rude
- 15 Would you be ..... enough to close the door?  
a kind b grumpy c ashamed d help

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2030? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say: "There won't be any left." or "Whatever it is, there won't be much taste<sup>(1)</sup> in it." Of course there are good reasons for being pessimistic<sup>(2)</sup> about the world's food supplies<sup>(3)</sup> in the future.

Nevertheless<sup>(4)</sup>, not all experts share the general despondency<sup>(5)</sup>. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries<sup>(6)</sup>. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a food shortage<sup>(7)</sup>, but that methods<sup>(8)</sup> of cultivation<sup>(9)</sup> are not sufficient. advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed<sup>(11)</sup> to all that need it.

- ١ مذاق
- ٢ تشائم
- ٣ إمدادات
- ٤ بالترحم من
- ٥ اليأس
- ٦ دول نامية
- ٧ نقص
- ٨ طرق
- ٩ زراعة
- ١٠ بشكل كافٍ
- ١١ موزع

Moreover in most industrialized countries, one important cause of trouble is our conservative<sup>(12)</sup> preference<sup>(13)</sup> for meat. After all, we are already in a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population.

By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have resolved<sup>(14)</sup>. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients<sup>(15)</sup> like Soya beans. However, skeptical we may be about their claim that they can produce the substance<sup>(16)</sup>, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint<sup>(17)</sup> about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial<sup>(18)</sup> bones, skin<sup>(19)</sup> and fat<sup>(20)</sup>!

- ١٢ تحفظا
- ١٣ تفضيل
- ١٤ يعيد حل
- ١٥ مكونات
- ١٦ مادة
- ١٧ شكوي
- ١٨ صناعي
- ١٩ جلد
- ٢٠ دهون

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 There won't be food shortage in the future if the food is .....  
a fairly distributed b unfairly distributed  
c of high quality d of low quality
- 2 The main idea of the passage is.....  
a the advantages of eating soya beans  
b the causes of food shortage and its solutions  
c the distribution of food  
d population increasing all over the world
- 3 The problem of food can be solved if we .....  
a use the internet and mass media  
b use advanced methods of cultivation  
c use more water from the sea  
d purify the river water
- 4 We feed animals on grain to produce .....  
a high quantity beef b fat and food supplies  
c skin and vegetables d high quality beef
- 5 Which sentence of the following can best summarise the last paragraph?  
a Soya beans can change the taste of meat  
b Soya beans, steak and food ingredients  
c Beans, fats and skin  
d Soya beans as a replacement of meat
- 6 According to the passage, using vegetable ingredients is one of the methods to overcome the shortage of.....  
a protein b fats c vitamins d calcium
- 7 According to the passage, food production is growing..... the population.  
a as slow as b as fast as c faster than d slower than
- 8 According to the passage, our diet may be..... in the future.  
a the same b difficult c different d traditional

أحرص على اقتناء أقوى كتب المراجعات للتأهولة العامة

التأهيل



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 He's ..... attractive but not what I'd call gorgeous.  
a quite b quiet c quit d quick
- 2 Why do you think young people use ..... language in their chats?  
a foreign b informal c former d formal
- 3 My mother usually ..... delicious dishes every time we have guests!  
a impairs b repairs c prepares d performs
- 4 W.H.O. is the ..... for 'World Health Organization'.  
a sign b symbol c emoji d abbreviation
- 5 The young man received a ..... for rescuing the two tourists who got lost in the desert.  
a money b profit c reward d loss
- 6 Ali had to react politely so as not to insult his friend. React is a synonym for .....  
a comfort b connect c respond d mistake
- 7 The workers ..... against the cruel treatment of their employer.  
a suggested b protested c consisted d protected
- 8 I'd prefer to have dinner at home ..... go to restaurants.  
a rather than b other than c to d neither than
- 9 Our team ..... that victory because of the excellent tactics they had followed.  
a deserved b observed c deprived d lacked
- 10 It is wise for people not to ..... social occasions in large groups to avoid being infected with COVID-9.  
a distribute b graduate c celebrate d cooperate
- 11 I must ..... my doctor; I feel chest pain.  
a result b insist c consult d insult
- 12 You should drink the right ..... of water every day.  
a number b member c mount d amount
- 13 My mother usually ..... fresh bread every morning.  
a is buying b buy c bought d buys
- 14 Come on boys, let's ..... some work!  
a make b do c made d did
- 15 She arrived ..... the office very late.  
a at b in c on d to
- 16 ..... the cheque arrives, we can't pay the rent.  
a After b During c Until d On
- 17 Most of our windows need ..... They are very dusty.  
a clean b to clean c to cleaning d cleaning
- 18 ..... studying medicine is difficult, many students are eager to join that top faculty.  
a Despite b However c Because of d Although
- 19 There are a lot of things in our ..... use, made from trees.  
a every day b everyday c day d ever day
- 20 He was a great novelist though his first three novels were not a .....  
a succeed b success c successful d succeeding
- 21 He was a great novelist though his first three novels were not .....  
a succeed b success c successful d succeeding

Finish the following dialogue:

Sameh  
Soha  
Sameh  
Soha  
Sameh  
Soha  
Sameh  
Soha  
Sameh  
Soha  
Sameh  
Soha

between a husband and his wife who looks very upset

- 1 Don't you know! I need more money.  
I believe I can't afford over L.E1400 a month for living expenses.
- 2 I know, but there's nothing more we can do about it.
- 3 Oh! I don't think it is easy to find a part time job nowadays.
- 4 Try again. We need more money.  
Don't you think you're wasteful?
- 5 Considering our salaries and the ever increasing prices, our expenses mustn't exceed L.E 1500 a month,  
Why mustn't. Are we going to starve!
- 6 No. ....  
That's right but quickly as I can't stand this live more.

Translate into Arabic:

- 1 Our country has rich natural resources. If we make best use of them, they will lead to welfare and remarkable progress.
- 2 The Egyptian Youth have proved that they are aware, civilized, loving their country and keen on its progress.
- 3 All economic reforms aim to realize high rates of growth and investment in a bid to create new jobs for youths.

Translate into English:

- 1 تسعى المؤسسة التعليمية إلى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطي وتدريب الأجيال الصاعدة على المشاركة وإبداء الرأي والنقد البناء.
- 2 زيادة الاستثمارات في مجالات النشاط الاقتصادي المختلفة هي مفتاح النمو والتقدم.
- 3 السياحة مصدر هام لجلب العملة الصعبة لمصر لذا علينا أن نقدم كل التسهيلات الممكنة لجذب السياح إلى مصر.

Write a paragraph of (120 words) about "Woman's role in the society"

Enrich your language

يخلق / ينشأ	create	واعي
معدلات النمو	rates of growth	متحضر
يكبر	devote	استثمار
العملة الصعبة	hard currency	التقدم
التسهيلات	facilities	تسعى إلى
يؤدي إلى	lead to	يؤدي إلى
معدل	resources	موارد / مصادر
يحسن استغلال	make best use	الرفاهية
progress	welfare	مميز
seek to	remarkable	



### الأهداف العامة للوحدة Objectives

- Reading** A scientific text  
**Writing** Online comments about the impact of technology. An argumentative essay about technology  
**Listening** A discussion about innovations in medicine  
**Speaking** Making predictions about the future of technology  
**Language** Future tenses: present perfect for future use **Life skills** Problem solving: Critical thinking

### 1 Main Vocabulary

innovation	ابتكار	beyond	ما وراء / خلف	evolve	يتطور / يتغير
immersive(adj)	مغمور / غامر	imagination	خيال / تخيل	recycle	يعيد استخدام
surround	يحيط	speakers	سماعات	method	طريقة / نظام / كيفية
immerse	يغمور / يغطس	distant (adj)	بعيد	device	جهاز
implement	يطبق / ينفذ	competitive	تنافسي	prediction	تنبؤ
mass-produced	ينتج بكمية كبيرة	audience	جمهور / مقابلة رسمية	practical(adj)	عملي
approach	طريقة / نظام / مقاربة	visuals	مؤثرات بصرية	advertise	يعلن
spectacularly(adv)	بشكل مذهل	opportunities	فرص	educational(adj)	تعليمي
inconvenient(adj)	غير ملائم	packaging	تعبئة / تغليف	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
process	عملية / سلسلة من الخطوات	display (v)(n)	عرض / يعرض / يظهر	research	بحث علمي / دراسة
artificial intelligence	ذكاء اصطناعي	applications	تطبيقات / برامج	sheet	ورقة / ملصقة
experiment (v)(n)	يجرب / تجربة	science fiction	خيال علمي	paper-thin	رقيق جداً / دقيق
sensor	مستشعر / جهاز الإحساس	planet	كوكب	major	رئيسي
astronaut	رائد فضاء	curious(adj)	فضولي	liquid	سائل
spacecraft	مركبة فضاء	constantly(adv)	باستمرار	advance	رقي / تقدم / ارتفاع
universe	الكون	health care	الرعاية الصحية	explore	يستكشف
astronomer	عالم الفلك	permanent(adj)	دائم / مستمر / باق	balance (v)(n)	توازن / ميزان
solar system	الجمجمة الشمسية	minus	سالب	temperature	درجة الحرارة
surface	سطح	conquer	يفوز / يهزم / يقهر	decade	عقد (عشر سنوات)
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	survive	ينجو / يعيش	fitness	لياقة
records	سجلات / أرقام قياسية	evidence	دليل	wonder	يتساءل
operation	عملية (جراحية)	charge	يتقاضى أجر / تكلفة / يشحن	comment	تعليق / يعلق
treatment	علاج	illustrated book	كتاب مصور	impact (v)(n)	تأثير / يؤثر
surgeon	جراح	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	roll (v)(n)	بكرة / لفافة / يتدحرج
surgery	جراحة	argumentative	جدلي	scale	میزان / نطاق / مقياس

### 2 Additional Vocabulary

involve (v)	يتضمن / يقرن	data	بيانات	task	مهمة
difficulty (n)	صعوبة	replace	يستبدل	field	حقل / مجال
cheaply (adv)	بشكل رخيص	step (v)(n)	خطوة / يخطو	advantages	مميزات
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ	powerful (adj)	قوي / ذو نفوذ	disadvantages	عيوب
require	يتطلب	extreme	شديد / متطرف	environment	البيئة
create	يخلق / يبدع	expand	يتوسع / يوسع	terrible (adj)	فظيع
hidden (adj)	مخفي	collect	يجمع	calculator	آلة حاسبة / مجموعة جداول
degree	درجة (علمية / حرارة)	results	نتائج	businesses	أعمال
freezing (adj)	متجمد	normal (adj)	طبيعي	organisation	منظمة
shortly (adv)	بعد قليل / باختصار	electric (adj)	كهربائي	article	مقال / أداة / قطعة
products	منتجات	distances	مسافات	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
monitor (v)(n)	يراقب / شاشة مراقبة	equipment	معدات	expressions	تعبيرات
shape	شكل	injury	إصابة	connect	يتصل بـ
technology	تكنولوجيا	measure (v)(n)	يقيس / يقياس	director	مخرج / مدير
series	سلسلة / مسلسل	accurately (adv)	بدقة	quality	جودة
experience	خبرة / تجربة / يجرب	factories	مصانع	advertisement	إعلان
condition	ظرف / حالة / شرط	machines	آلات	development	تنمية / تطوير
exist	يوجد	shop assistant	بائع	printing	طباعة
similar	مشابه	the wild	البرية	special (adj)	خاص / مميز
potentially	من الممكن / من المحتمل	fuel	وقود	wind	رياح
blog	موقع	healthy (adj)	صحي	face (v)(n)	يواجه / وجه
recently (adv)	حديثاً	improve	يتحسن / يحسن	seat	مقعد
earn	يكسب / يربح	perform	يؤدي / يمثل	share (v)(n)	يشارك / نصيب / حصة
discuss	يناقش	robot	إنسان آلي	discover	يكشف
dishwasher	غسالة أطباق	recognise	يدرک / يعرف		
support (v)(n)	يدعم / تدعم	human	بشر		

### Synonyms & Antonyms

#### word meaning

innovation	ابتداع
immerse	يغمور / يجذب
inconvenient	غير ملائم
distant	بعيد
constantly	باستمرار
permanent	دائم
freezing	متجمد
normal	طبيعي

#### Synonym

modernization - variation - creation
catch up - attract - interest
annoying - disturbing
faraway - remote
continually - frequently
endless - constant
cold - chilly - icy
common-average-regular

#### Antonym

tradition - imitation - replica
bore - tire
acceptable - convenient
nearby - close
occasionally - rarely
temporary - short - term
warm - hot - boiling
abnormal - exceptional



### 3 Prepositions

on	One hand	من ناحية
	the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
based	in	متواجد في
	on	قائم على
work	out	يعمل / يستخرج
run		ينفذ
lead		يؤثر في
connect	to	يتصل بـ
related		متعلق بـ

at	a time	في كل مرة
	this time	في هذه المرة
go	up	تزايد
	down	تناقص
find out	about	يكتشف عن
worried		مقلق بشأن
immerse		ينغمس في
expand	into	يتوسع في
cut		يقطع إلى

instead of	بدلاً من	communicate in	يتواصل بـ (لغة)
essential for	ضروري لـ	throw away	يلقي / يتخلص من

### 4 Expressions & Idioms

burning questions	on a big scale	تلك الأيام
after all	surrounded by	بمناظر
on average	at a competitive price	بمعدل
below freezing	with the help of	بمساعدة
self-driving cars	controlled by humans	يتحكم فيه الإنسان
thanks to	in the last ... years	في خلال ... سنوات السابقة
within the next year	in the next decade	في العقد القادم
go as far back as	cut open your body	يقطع الجسم ليجري جراحة
in fact (in truth)	send onto	يرسل إلى (كوكبيد..)
keep in touch	up give	يستلم / يتقاع عن

### 5 Derivatives

Verb	
differ	يختلف
innovate	يبدع / ابتكر
operate	يشغل / يجري عملية
treat	يعالج / يعامل
immerse	يقمر / يغمس
balance	يتوازن
survive	ينجو / يحيا
recycle	يعيد تصنيع / يعيد استخدام

Noun	
difference	اختلاف / فرق
innovation	ابتكار / ابتكار
operation	عملية (جراحية)
treatment	علاج
balance	توازن
survival	البقاء على قيد الحياة
recycling	إعادة التصنيع

Adjective	
different	مختلف
innovative	ابتداعي / ابتداعي
operative	فعال
treatable	قابل للعلاج
immersive	مغمور / غامر
balanced	متوازن
recycled	معاد تصنيعه
recyclable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام

### Definitions

speaker	ساعة	the part of a radio, television, or computer, or of a piece of electrical equipment for playing recorded sound, through which the sound is played
immersive	مغمور / غامر	impressive
surround	يحيط	to be everywhere around something
immerse	يقمر / يغمس	to become completely involved deeply in an activity
implement	يطبق / ينفذ	to put a plan or system into operation
mass-produced	يتم إنتاجه بكمية كبيرة	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine
approach	طريقة / نظام	a way of considering or doing something
spectacularly	بشكل مذهل	in a very beautiful way that people admire
inconvenient	غير ملائم	causing problems or difficulties (unsuitable)
process	عملية / سلسلة من الخطوات	a series of actions that you take in order to achieve a result
experiment (v)	يجرب	to try something in order to discover what it is like or find out more about it
astronaut	رائد فضاء	a person who travels and works in a spacecraft
imagination	خيال / تخيل	the ability to form pictures in the mind
drugs	عقاقير / مخدرات	medicines or things that make medicines
operation	عملية (جراحية)	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged
sensor	مستشعر / جهاز الإحساس	a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.
treatment	علاج	something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill
surgeon	جراح	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better

أعرض على اقتناء سلسلة العملاقة في اللغة الإنجليزية





## Reading

Read the article about the sound

"Surround sound" is a system that uses 3 or more **speakers** to make you feel like you are surrounded by sound. Surround sound **experiments go as far back as** the 1930s. **fact, the technology was first introduced** in 1940. In the Walt Disney Film Fantasia, which used Fantasound. The was a **system designed** to totally **immerse** the **audience** the film like the **visuals** did. **Unfortunately**, it was **expensive** to **implement on a big scale**, as Fantasound needed 54 **speakers**. It wasn't until 1975, with the **invention** of Dolby Stereo, **requiring** just four **speakers** that 'surround sound' became **practical**. It was used **spectacularly** in the film Star Wars. True surround sound in the home, however, didn't arrive until 1982, with the **introduction** of Dolby Surround **technology**. But this still required four speakers, making it expensive and **inconvenient**. Now, a whole new **approach** has been developed by scientists at the Chemnitz University of Technology in Germany, which uses paper instead of speakers.

The team had **experimented** before, in 2015, they **created** an **illustrated** book which had **speakers hidden** inside the pages that made **noises** as readers turned them over. Now they have **developed** a printing **process** which can **print** whole **rolls** of the **paper-thin** speakers, **rather than** one sheet **at a time**. They have used this to make the T-ring, a 360-degree paper speaker, a sound **experience** more **immersive** than even a cinema, and can be potentially **mass-produced** at a **competitive** price. Professor Hubler from the University **predicts** that one **major** use of this new idea will be for audio **advertising** and **packaging**. **Imagine** the packaging on bottles and tins playing music or **advertises** for you in your **local** supermarket!

### Technology in the cinema

When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. **Technology**, however, is making the film experience even more real.

In the 1970s, a company called IMAX took a different **approach**. Their films were shown on very large, tall **screens**. **Special speakers** were put behind the screen, which helped to **make** the sound **better** and **louder**. **In addition**, the films were made using a **special process** which made the pictures look much more real.

The problem with these types of films was the **cost**. They had to build **special square** cinemas, because people needed to watch the film in **seats** which all faced the screen. You also needed **special** cameras and couldn't make films of more than an hour long.

So these films were nearly all **educational** often about nature. One of the most **popular** was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were **surrounded** by snowy mountains.



Since 2000, however, **similar** technology has allowed **traditional** films to be made in the same way. These are **mass-produced** and shown in **traditional** cinemas. **As a result**, many modern films sound great. Many are in 3D, so that the pictures look **real** and not **flat**. Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to **immerse** you even more into the **experience**. Other cinemas have even **experimented** with allowing you to feel the film using smell, rain and wind. However, the **cost** of this will **probably** mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

Read Tarek's question in the blog

[www.teenastronomers...](http://www.teenastronomers...)

Teen Astronomers is a **website** for young people who **are interested in finding out about** the world they live in. If you have any **burning questions**, please email us at [teenastronomers@theconversation.edu.au](mailto:teenastronomers@theconversation.edu.au).

Why has nobody found any life outside of Earth? - Tarek, age 17, Zagazig, Egypt.

Thank you **for** your question, Tarek.

Astronomers like us are **constantly** searching for **planets** which may **support human** life, but they're not easy to find. To start with, it's **likely** that if such a planet **exists**, it will be **outside** our **solar system**. Until we have **invented** the **technology** to get us to these planets, we won't **be able to** study the **conditions** there.

But we'll keep using the technology we have to find out what we can until we have found some **evidence**. One of the most important things is to find a planet with water, because it is **essential** for all life **forms**.

Scientists **recently discovered** that there is **permanent liquid** water on Mars, which made a lot of people **excited**. After all, it is the closest planet to Earth. However, **on average**, the **temperature** on Mars is about minus 60 **degrees** Celsius. In winter it can go down as low as 125 degrees below **freezing**. When we've found a way for astronauts to survive these extreme temperatures, they'll be able to **spend** enough time on the surface of Mars to **collect useful data**.

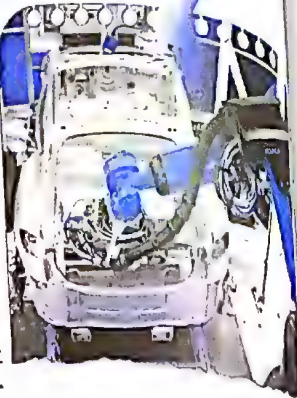
Mars is **hopefully** just one step into the **universe**. Once we've **conquered** Mars, it will be easier to expand into the universe beyond with future **advances in space technology**.



## Possible future uses of AI

Experts all agree that we will see more artificial intelligence (AI) in the future, but how will this affect our lives?

Factories already use AI to build cars and machines. Work that used to be done by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades, computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop assistants. That means many shops and businesses won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours.

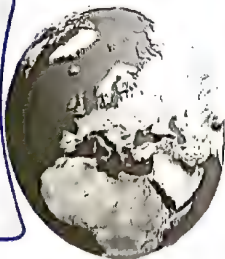


When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you advertisements to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need to be mass-produced.

Many people think that self-driving cars will have replaced traditional cars within the next few decades. We will all be calling self-driving cars to take us where we want to go just like we call a taxi today.

Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing art or music. AI will also help us to communicate in any language. Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to AI.

Earth is one of the eight planets of our solar system. Astronomers have been able to study most of these planets for many years. However, we will start to learn more about them when we can send astronauts further than the moon, where they have been already. Scientists have already sent spacecraft onto the surface of planets such as Mars, and with each journey, we can learn more and more about the universe around us.



نحن على اقتناء سلسلة العملاقة في اللغة الإنجليزية



## Notice the Difference

experience	خبرة / تجربة حياتية	experiment	تجربة علمية / يجرب
process	عملية (ذات خطوات محددة)	operation	عملية (جراحية/حسابية)
search	يبحث / يفحص	research	بحث علمي
planet	كوكب	plant	نبات / يزرع
surface	سطح	roof	سطح المنزل
device	جهاز	devise	يبتكر
rather than	بدلاً من	other than	بخلاف / غير / بالإضافة إلى
astronomer	عالم فلك	astronaut	رالد فضاء
advertise	يعلن (عن سلع)	announce	يعلن / يصرح
wonder	يتساءل / يتعجب	wander	يتجول
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
degree	درجة حرارة / مؤهل جامعي / درجة علمية	grade	مستوى / صف دراسي / درجة امتحان
require	يتطلب	enquire / inquire	يستفسر

- Leaves falling from trees in autumn is a completely natural.....
- My uncle is a brilliant surgeon; he usually performs emergency ..... successfully.
- It's quite common to include your voluntary work ..... in your CV.
- I like to ..... with different light filters on my camera.
- It's a good idea to do some ..... before you buy a house.
- Earth is the third ..... from the sun.
- Neil Armstrong was the first person to set foot on the ..... of the moon.
- Rescuers used a special ..... to find people trapped in collapsed buildings.
- I'd prefer to go to cinema ..... watch TV.
- Inside a spacecraft, a / an ..... could float weightless, hardly in contact with the floor.
- We ..... our car in the local newspaper to sell it.
- She ..... who'd sent her the mysterious email.
- I won't be able to attend the meeting.
- He has attained the highest ..... in his music exams.
- Options: a) co-operation, b) procession, c) operation, d) process, a) co-operation, b) processions, c) operations, d) processes, a) experiences, b) experience, c) an experience, d) experiment, a) experiences, b) an experiment, c) an experience, d) experiment, a) research, b) experiments, c) search, d) operations, a) plant, b) planet, c) paint, d) plain, a) top, b) flat, c) surface, d) roof, a) realize, b) advice, c) device, d) advance, a) rather than, b) than, c) other rather, d) to, a) astronaut, b) surgeon, c) representative, d) astronomer, a) treated, b) immersed, c) advertised, d) announced, a) wandered, b) wondered, c) experimented, d) survived, a) Unfortunately, b) Fortunately, c) Fortunate, d) Unfortunate, a) grade, b) degree, c) licence, d) disagree



- What ..... did you get from your university?  
 (a) grade (b) quality (c) degree (d) licence  
 Mai ..... how long I had stayed in London the previous year.  
 (a) inquired (b) acquired (c) required (d) told

Don't get confused

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- Innovation and creation are .....  
 (a) different meaning (b) opposites (c) antonyms (d) synonyms  
 In their little boat they planned to voyage to distant lands. Distant is the synonym of .....  
 (a) remote (b) nearby (c) close (d) near  
 The accident left him with permanent brain damage. The antonym of "permanent" is .....  
 (a) endless (b) constant (c) temporary (d) continuous  
 He's constantly changing his mind. The synonym of "constantly" is .....  
 (a) rarely (b) occasionally (c) hardly (d) frequently  
 She got some books out of the library and immersed herself in history and culture. Immerse here means .....  
 (a) object (b) avoid (c) hate (d) interest  
 It will be very inconvenient for me to have no car. The word 'inconvenient' here can be replaced by .....  
 (a) suitable (b) unsuitable (c) acceptable (d) reasonable

Don't get confused

### Prepositions, Expressions & Idioms

- ....., I hate talkative people.  
 (a) With fact (b) At fact (c) In fact (d) On fact  
 They were forced to give ..... their home because they couldn't pay the debt.  
 (a) at (b) off (c) out (d) up  
 The movie is based ..... the true story of a London gangster.  
 (a) out (b) for (c) on (d) in  
 Do you still consider space ..... a waste of money?  
 (a) exportation (b) explosion (c) explanation (d) exploration  
 He was the sort of person you could .....  
 (a) depend on (b) depend in (c) based in (d) rely in  
 Pollution will ..... to serious problems in the future.  
 (a) lead (b) result (c) cause (d) bring  
 Instead ..... buying a new pair of shoes, I had my old ones repaired.  
 (a) of (b) off (c) out (d) up  
 He spoke of his ..... desire to play for England.  
 (a) burningly (b) burn (c) burning (d) burnt  
 Can you work ..... how much each card cost?  
 (a) as (b) out (c) in (d) with  
 My income's rather variable, but I earn £73 a day .....  
 (a) to average (b) of average (c) in average (d) on average  
 It's thanks ..... Sandy that I heard about the job.  
 (a) to (b) of (c) about (d) with  
 No, Jane and I never kept in ..... after college.  
 (a) smell (b) connect (c) touch (d) taste



### Exercises on Vocabulary

- The ..... of some planets in our solar system is rocky.  
 (a) impact (b) face (c) scar (d) surface  
 She has made a great contribution to social work in her neighbourhood. Contribution here is a synonym for .....  
 (a) deprivation (b) estimation (c) donation (d) relation  
 Doctors keep the health ..... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.  
 (a) paper (b) records (c) placements (d) figures  
 You should ..... your foot in ice-cold water to reduce the swelling.  
 (a) appear (b) float (c) inverse (d) immerse  
 What is the best ..... for a headache?  
 (a) cause (b) illness (c) treatment (d) surgeon  
 When you want to introduce an opposite opinion when you are writing, you can say .....  
 (a) In the other way (b) On the other hand (c) By the other hand (d) On one side  
 Scientists are still trying to discover more and more about the ..... around us.  
 (a) universe (b) astronomers (c) astronauts (d) superstitions  
 The ..... on most phones are very good now. Music sounds loud and clear on them.  
 (a) batteries (b) covers (c) monitors (d) speakers  
 The shops are ..... by big buildings. It is the only small building in the road.  
 (a) surrounded (b) implemented (c) immersed (d) mass-produced  
 Noha had a ..... big birthday cake in the shape of the pyramids!  
 (a) constantly (b) spectacularly (c) shortly (d) accurately  
 The play was so good that I was totally ..... in the story. I forgot I was in a theatre!  
 (a) implemented (b) boring (c) immersed (d) bored  
 The wood goes through a/an ..... which turns it into paper.  
 (a) experience (b) operation (c) profession (d) process  
 All the trains were cancelled, which was very ..... as I couldn't get to college.  
 (a) inspiring (b) suitable (c) inconvenient (d) convenient  
 Plastic toys are very cheap because thousands of them are ..... in factories.  
 (a) mass-produced (b) miss-produced (c) mess-produced (d) math-produced  
 Earth is one of the eight planets of our .....  
 (a) planet system (b) sun system (c) solar discipline (d) solar system  
 ..... have been able to study most of these planets for many years.  
 (a) Surgeons (b) Sensors (c) Astronomers (d) Astronauts  
 We will start to learn more about planets when we can send ..... further than the moon.  
 (a) professors (b) astronauts (c) astronomers (d) surgeons  
 Scientists have already sent spacecraft onto the ..... of planets such as Mars.  
 (a) flat (b) surround (c) face (d) surface  
 Once we have finished ..... Mars, we'll probably find other places that have life.  
 (a) finding out (b) exploring (c) inventing (d) discovering  
 I'm afraid getting things changed will be a slow .....  
 (a) process (b) processor (c) mass-produced (d) speaker  
 The car had a powerful sound system with four .....  
 (a) spokesmen (b) speakers (c) implements (d) spokeswomen  
 Attempts to ..... change have met with strong opposition.  
 (a) implement (b) immerse (c) surround (d) recycle



- The word '.....' means made in large quantities, using machines.  
 a surround sound b implemented c inconvenient d mass-produced
- We can learn more and more about the ..... around us.  
 a social b universal c universe d environmental
- ..... all over the world will be observing the eclipse.  
 a Experiments b Gastronomy c Astronomers d Astrologers
- ..... games can be used for training and education.  
 a Immersive b Excited c Bored d Impressed
- Not long ago I had read that each atom was a sort of ..... system.  
 a sunny b solar c sun d moon
- The ..... they were using no longer seemed to work.  
 a implement b surgeon c approach d universe
- Visible light from the sun passes through the atmosphere to the Earth's .....  
 a surface b implement c approach d gang
- She was found to be under the influence of .....  
 a planets b drugs c speakers d processes
- Many customers are influenced by designer names and fancy .....  
 a operations b distances c packaging d pack of lies
- The President has been keen to encourage economic ..... in Egypt.  
 a ruin b damage c grow d development
- We need to encourage ..... in industry.  
 a innovation b planets c surgery d damage
- The equipment encourages the children to ..... in different ways.  
 a approach b experiment c implement d practice
- They crossed the mountains and headed for the valleys .....  
 a beyond b on c above d over
- I think our teachers should try using different ..... in teaching.  
 a operations b educational c surgeries d methods
- If you burn or scald yourself, immediately ..... the affected part in cold water.  
 a immerse b connect c charge d calculate
- She sat in an armchair, ..... by her 12 cats.  
 a charged b displayed c survived d surrounded
- It doesn't sound like a very ..... solution.  
 a practical b botanical c surrounded d universe
- If you want to attract customers you need to .....  
 a involve b advertise c suicide d survive
- He ..... his style of painting while working as a magazine illustrator.  
 a evolved b exploded c hid d survived
- Their success defies the ..... made by most experts.  
 a activities b elections c predictions d experiments
- The ..... uses a transmitter that connects to your computer.  
 a advice b advise c devise d device
- She accepted his diagnosis without .....  
 a surface b surgery c comment d commence
- She saw a / an ..... for a ski vacation in Europe.  
 a surgeon b fitness c adversary d advertisement
- There are plans to build new cycle lanes through the city, but they have not yet .....  
 a survived b implemented c surrounded d immersed

- The company is run by a board of .....  
 a directors b distances c injuries d cuts
- I didn't ..... Khaled in his uniform.  
 a earn b improve c survive d recognise
- Some people are allergic to dairy .....  
 a results b universe c products d innovation
- The hotel offers a high standard of service at ..... rates.  
 a curious b competitive c argumentative d illustrated
- These companies are all ..... players in the food industry. They are important.  
 a major b minor c curious d approach
- The two women were from similar social and ..... backgrounds.  
 a education b educational c science fiction d spacecraft
- With children, it is important to achieve the right ..... between love and discipline.  
 a conquer b major c treatment d balance
- My brother is so .....; every time I say something, he has to disagree.  
 a educational b argumentative c spectacularly d permanent
- These materials are ..... into other packaging products.  
 a cycled b immersed c recycled d involved
- Environmental awareness has increased dramatically over the past .....  
 a space b decade c times d decay
- It has been a / an ..... successful year.  
 a artificial b introduced c awfully d spectacularly
- Can you come at 10.30? I know it's ..... for you, but I must see you.  
 a convenient b inconvenient c continent d contestant
- The latest Japanese vacuum cleaners contain ..... that detect the amount of dust and type of floor.  
 a senses b implements c tenses d sensors
- It's important to ..... a good impression when you meet a new client.  
 a conquer b create c immerse d survive
- She has a / an ..... on her lung to remove a tumour.  
 a evidence b science fiction c operation d audience
- The president is more ..... than the prime minister.  
 a difficulty b powerful c power d intelligence
- The government has ..... economic aid to the region.  
 a expanded b damaged c exploded d hid
- The school is funded by a religious .....  
 a drug b surgery c development d organisation
- Applying online ..... less time and effort.  
 a survives b requires c involves d conquers
- Two motorists needed hospital ..... following the accident.  
 a treatment b environment c replacement d temperature
- I prefer teaching methods that actively ..... students in learning.  
 a solve b evolve c involve d display
- According to historical ..... , she was married at the age of eighteen.  
 a retirement b treatments c drugs d records
- The only way to ..... a fear is to face it.  
 a process b display c conquer d surround
- The ..... , who will operate on you, is very famous.  
 a butcher b surgeon c teacher d astronaut





- 100 You need a good level of physical ..... for this sport.  
 a fat b fit c surgeon d fitness
- 101 Trained coaches will provide support at no extra .....  
 a charge b change c exchange d check
- 102 He used striking ..... to get his point across.  
 a astronomer b spacecraft c surgery d visuals
- 103 We received training on a number of spreadsheet and database .....  
 a practical b applications c applicable d planets
- 104 The course also provides a/an ..... to study Japanese.  
 a opportunity b chain c series d fitness
- 105 The government has promised better health ..... for all.  
 a medical b costume c careful d care
- 106 The accident has not done any ..... damage.  
 a surgeon b permanent c survive d planet
- 107 A famous doctor has volunteered to perform the ..... at no cost.  
 a surgery b injury c laundry d packaging
- 108 These stories are the product of an overactive .....  
 a starvation b imagination c deletion d fictional
- 109 You have to be ..... aware of your surroundings when walking home late at night.  
 a consonant b constant c constantly d immersive
- 110 Many of these teachers are struggling to ..... financially.  
 a survive b die c innovate d immerse
- 111 The exhibition gives local artists an opportunity to ..... their work.  
 a immerse b display c damage d surround
- 112 The threat of ..... will eventually force the US to slow down its energy consumption.  
 a artificial intelligence b education c global warming d calculator
- 113 Magdy was ..... to know what happened.  
 a spectacularly b article c immersive d curious
- 114 I have ..... slices of raw beef.  
 a paper money b paper knife c paper-thin d paper clip
- 115 I've done some ..... to find out the cheapest way of travelling there.  
 a implement b research c researcher d evidence
- 116 Cinema ..... would be more accepting of this sort of advertising.  
 a audiences b treatments c experiments d surgeons
- 117 The stars are more ..... from the earth than the sun.  
 a innovation b descent c distance d distant
- 118 It's a / an ..... that offers free legal advice to people on low incomes.  
 a evidence b science fiction c organisation d approach
- 119 Researchers have found clear scientific ..... of a link between exposure to sun and skin cancer.  
 a surgery b evidence c evidently d treatment
- 120 ..... is a type of computer technology which is concerned with making machines work in an intelligent way, similar to the way that the human mind works.  
 a Artificially b Artificial respiration c Artificial insemination d Artificial intelligence

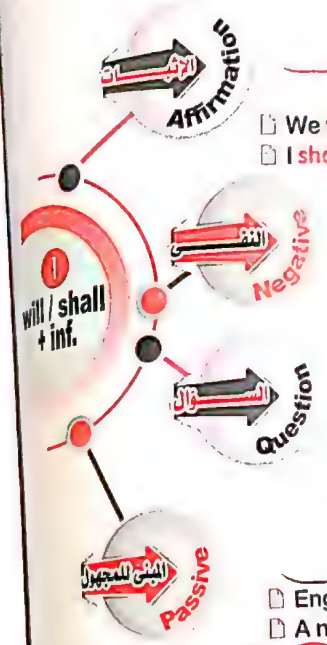


Future forms and tenses

مع هازمة المستقبل

- 1 will / shall + inf.
- 2 (am - is - are) + going to + inf.
- 3 (am - is - are) + v + ing
- 4 التصريف الأول للفعل (V or V + s)
- 5 will be + ing.
- 6 will have + P.P.

المستقبل البسيط  
 المضارع المستمر  
 المضارع البسيط  
 المستقبل المستمر  
 المستقبل التام



will / shall + inf.

I - we تأتي مع shall

- We **will** study English tomorrow.
- I **shall** build a new house next year.

won't / shan't + inf.

- We **won't** study English tomorrow.
- I **shan't** build a new house next year.

Will / Shall + inf. + ?

- Will you **study** English tomorrow?  
 ✓ Yes, we **will**. ✗ No, we **won't**.
- What **will** you **do** tomorrow?

will / shall be + inf.

- English **will be studied** tomorrow by us.
- A new house **will be built** next year.

كلمات مفتاحية Key words

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المستقبل البسيط ولاحظ انها تأتي اول الجملة واخرها مثل:

tomorrow	غداً
next + مدة زمنية	القادم
In the future	في المستقبل
soon	قريباً
shortly	قريباً
In a few (months - weeks - days - hours - minutes ...)	

- ▶ I hope it **won't** rain tomorrow.
- ▶ Next week, we **shall** visit the museum.
- ▶ I **will** travel abroad in the future.
- ▶ They **will** soon speak English well.
- ▶ Excuse me; I'll be with you shortly.
- ▶ I **will** visit my uncle in a few days.
- ▶ She **will** finish her study in a few months.



## Uses الاستخدامات

- I expect Toka and Jana will stay for lunch.
- Next year, I will be 20 years old.
- It is raining. I will take a taxi.
- That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
- I promise I'll buy you a mobile phone.
- Will you shut the window?
- Be careful or you will hurt yourself.
- Be quiet or I will punish you.

مع بعض الكلمات مثل:

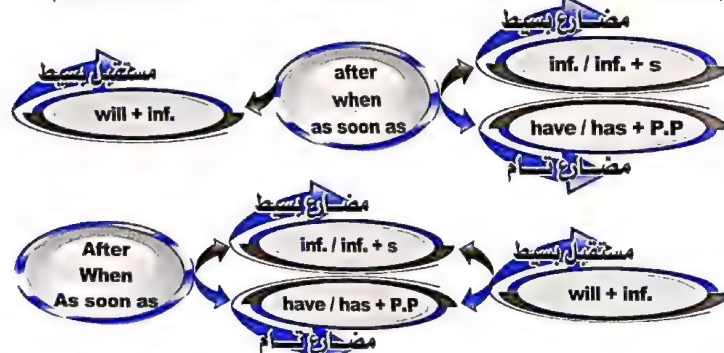
think, believe, expect, predict, hope, promise, sure, certainly, probably.

- I hope I will see him tomorrow.
- I expect he will win the race.
- I promise I will visit you tomorrow.
- I think it will rain.

يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الجمل الشرطية if... unless في الحالة الأولى.

- If I drop this glass, it will break.
- Unless he studies hard, he will fail.

يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الروابط في أزمنة المضارع (after-before-when-until-as soon as...).



- After I (do) have done my homework, I'll go to bed.
- As soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London, she will call me.
- When it gets warmer, the snow will start to melt.



- He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.
- I won't leave until I write (have written) this report.
- My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.

## Affirmation الإثباتات

(am - is - are) + going to + inf.

- She is going to study French as planned.
- They are going to visit Cairo.

## Negative الإنكار

(am not - isn't - aren't) + going to + inf.

- She isn't going to study French as planned.
- They aren't going to visit Cairo.

## Question السؤال

(Am - Is - Are) + going to + inf.

- Is she going to study French as planned?
- Yes, she is.
- No, she isn't.

## Passive المشي للمجهول

(am - is - are) + going to be + P.P.

- French is going to be studied as planned.
- Cairo is going to be visited.

## Uses الاستخدامات

١ تنبؤات مع وجود دليل

- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.
- He can't swim. He is going to drown.
- I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.

(مع الصفات المؤقتة لأنها تعتبر دليل)

٢ الخطط المستقبلية (plan - made a plan)

- Toka is going to play. She has planned that.
- I have a plan. I am going to start my project.

٣ النوايا (intend - intention)

- He is going to visit London. He has intended that.
- We are going to visit Cairo. We have intention.

٤ القرارات المسبقة (decide - make a decision - made up ... mind)

- They have decided they are going to study.
- She has made up her mind. She is going to leave.
- I've made my decision. I am going to travel abroad.

٥ أشياء على وشك الحدوث:

- Watch out! You're going to fall.
- Be careful! You are going to break it.

٦ بعض الكلمات الدالة على will إذا جاء دليل نستخدم be going to

think - believe - sure

- I think it will rain.
- It is cloudy. I think it is going to rain.
- My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.
- I am very ill so I am going to see a doctor.

٧ الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل أما الصفات المؤقتة تعتبر دليل

٨ الحفظ



"Ali phoned while you were out." "OK, I'll call him back."  
"Ali phoned while you were out." "Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back."

**Affirmation**

(am - is - are) + V + ing.

She is studying French as arranged.  
They are cooking meals as prepared.

**Negative**

(am not - isn't - aren't) + V + ing.

She isn't studying French as arranged.  
They aren't cooking meals as prepared.

**Question**

(am - is - are) + being + (P.P.)

Is she studying French as arranged?  
Yes, she is. No, she isn't.

French is being studied as arranged.  
Meals are being cooked as prepared.

**Uses**

- (arranged, booked, bought, made arrangements, prepared, all is okay)
- He is visiting his uncle. He has arranged.
- He is catching the 3 o'clock train. I am having dinner with Toka. I have booked a table.
- He's getting married next Friday.
- The school inspector is coming on Thursday.
- Our school is taking part in a competition next week.
- I can't meet you tomorrow as I am doing the shopping.
- She can't call you tonight as she is visiting her uncle.

**Affirmation**

(will - V + s)

The English class starts at 7.  
My train arrives at 7 tomorrow.

**Negative**

(doesn't - don't) + inf.

My train doesn't arrive at 7 tomorrow.  
The English class never starts at 7.

**Question**

(Does - Do) + (inf) + inf.

Does the train arrive at 7 o'clock?  
Yes, it does. No, it doesn't

French is studied at 7 o'clock.  
Meals are cooked every day.

**Uses**

- حدث في المستقبل طبقا لجدول أو تقويم (مواعيد / ميعاد / بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسرح)
- The plane takes off at 9 a.m.
- Our lesson starts at 12 p.m.

**Affirmation**

will + be + V + ing

She will be studying French at 7 tomorrow.  
They will be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

**Negative**

won't + be + V + ing

She won't be studying French at 7 tomorrow.  
They won't be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

**Question**

will + be + (inf) + be + ing

Will she be studying French at 7 tomorrow?  
Yes, she will. No, she won't.

will + be + (P.P.)

French will be studied at 7 tomorrow.  
Meals will be cooked from 8 to 9 tomorrow.



at.....tomorrow....	.....from ..... to	between.....and ...
at ....next ....	This time next....	tomorrow morning....

### Uses

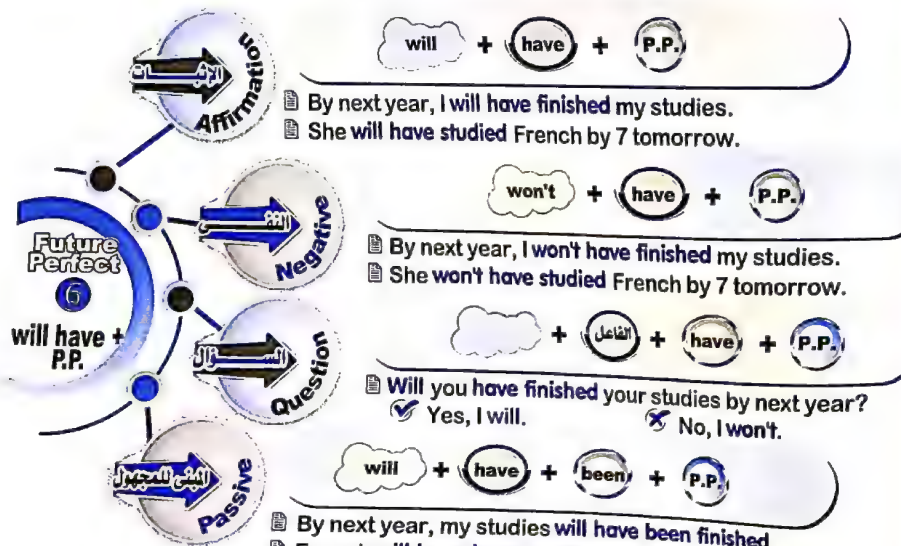
يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في نقطة معينة في المستقبل.

- At 10 tomorrow, he will be in his office, he **will be working**.
- This time tomorrow I **will be sitting** in the cinema. I **will be watching** a movie.
- At this time tomorrow, the engine **will be repaired**.
- In the future, I'll **be playing** tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.
- Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll **be having** dinner.
- At 9.30 next Tuesday, we **will be attending** her wedding party.

### Compare

**will be - ing with other continuous forms:**

- At 10 o'clock yesterday, Sally **was** in her office. She **was working**. (past)
- It's 10 o'clock now. She **is** in her office. She **is working**. (present)
- At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** in her office. She **will be working**. (future)



by (سنة قادمة - next..... - tomorrow - .....)	by the time
in..... في خلال فترة زمنية.. by.. بحلول = before....	This time tomorrow..
in (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes') time	

### Uses

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكتمل في وقت معين في المستقبل.

- By the end of this year, I **will have finished** my study.
- His new house **will have been built** by 2030.
- Before our parents come, we **will have tidied** our room.
- In five years, a lot of books **will have been published**.

### Compare

**will have (done) with other perfect forms:**

- Ted and Amy **have been** married for 24 years. (present perfect)
- Next year, they **will have been** married for 25 years. (future perfect)
- When their son was born, they **had been** married for three years. (past perfect)

- After Ali (had finished - **has finished**) his work, he will call us.
- She won't leave until she (**has had** - had had - has been) her money.
- It is cloudy. I think it (will - **is going to**) rain.
- It is cloudy. I (**won't** - am not going to) go out.
- The shop (will be opening - **opens**) from 9 until 6 tomorrow.
- I think our lesson (starts - **will start**) at 6 o'clock.
- She is very clever. She (**will** - is going to) get full marks.
- He is very tired. He (will - **is going to**) see a doctor.
- The President (will visit - is going to visit - **is visiting**) Aswan tomorrow.
- I expect we (**shall** - are going to) win the cup.
- After (has call - had called - **calling**) her, I will tell you what happened.
- This novel (**will be published** - will publish - will be come out) soon.
- I have just decided that I (am going to - **will**) buy this dress.
- The water is boiling. I (**will** - am going to) turn off the cooker.
- I can't meet you tomorrow as I (will revise - **will be revising**) my lessons.

حاول تفهم  
وتكتب  
سبب الاختيار





- 1 When we ..... enough information, we'll tell you.  
a have b had c had had d will have
- 2 I'll keep working hard until I ..... the exam.  
a pass b passes c will pass d had passed
- 3 I ..... able to write the report until I've done the research.  
a wasn't b didn't be c won't be d wouldn't be
- 4 Once I ..... the research, I'll start the report.  
a had done b does c has done d have done
- 5 Soon, my little brother ..... too old for primary school.  
a will have been b are going to be c will be d will be being
- 6 Within the next hundred years, we ..... a way to use water for fuel.  
a will have been found b will be finding c will be found d have found
- 7 Normal people won't travel in space until it ..... less expensive.  
a had become b become c has become d will become
- 8 Once you ..... your homework, will you tidy your room please?  
a have finished b will finish c had finished d finishes
- 9 When I ..... the experiments, we'll collect all the results.  
a have done b will do c has done d does
- 10 A: I am going out. Do you want to come with me? B: Why not? I ..... my jacket.  
a take b am taking c am going to take d will take
- 11 A: What ..... at the weekend? B: I intend to visit my friends in the village.  
a are you going to do b did you do c you will do d you are doing
- 12 I have made up my mind to spend the weekend in my village; I ..... spend the weekend there.  
a am going to b will c was going to d may
- 13 Within the next few years, we ..... able to see tigers in the wild, only in zoos.  
a going to be b wouldn't be c won't be d won't have been
- 14 In three decades, schools ..... computers instead of teachers.  
a will be used b is going to use c will use d will be using
- 15 Don't worry; I won't leave until you .....  
a have been arrived c had arrived b will arrive d have arrived
- 16 Once I ..... making the cake, I'll give you some to taste.  
a will finish b had finished c have finished d will be finishing
- 17 We won't be able to live on Mars until we ..... enough water there.  
a will find b have found c will be finding d found
- 18 I expect Rami ..... a successful engineer one day.  
a will be b are c going to be d have been
- 19 More people ..... electric cars in the future. Therefore we will cut down pollution.  
a were using b have to use c going to use d will be using

- 20 My grandson Omar ..... 10 next Friday.  
a is going to be b was c will be d has been
- 21 Farmers ..... the rainforest because they are cutting down more trees.  
a will be damaged b will damage c going to damage d are going to damage
- 22 We have agreed where and when to meet; we ..... at the club tonight as arranged.  
a are going to meet b will meet c meet d are meeting
- 23 I think we ..... the match.  
a are going to win b are winning c win d will win
- 24 Hassan got full marks; he ..... the faculty he likes.  
a is going to join b joins c joined d going to join
- 25 The sky is clear. I think it .....  
a is going to rain b will rain c isn't going to rain d won't rain
- 26 I ..... to Sharm El Sheikh as planned.  
a am going to go b am going c will go d go
- 27 I don't know how to log into the internet. - It's easy. I ..... you now, don't worry.  
a am going to show b won't show c will show d going to show
- 28 I hope ..... an army officer when I grow up.  
a to be b will be c being d would be
- 29 Who do you think ..... the final match?  
a would win b had won c will win d is going to win
- 30 Be careful, the bus ..... you: it is very near.  
a isn't going to hit b will hit c had hit d is going to hit
- 31 I ..... 16 next week. Are you going to come to my birthday party?  
a am being b will be c am going to be d was
- 32 He is clever. I think he ..... high marks.  
a is getting b gets c will get d is going to get
- 33 In the future, I think we ..... electric cars.  
a will drive b be driving c drive d are driving
- 34 They ..... to build a new hospital in the city next year.  
a will b going c are going d will be
- 35 The branch of tree is shaking, it .....  
a falls b will fall c is falling d is going to fall
- 36 Do you think people ..... holidays in space one day?  
a will have b going to have c are having d will be having
- 37 Will you ..... the bus to school next week?  
a be take b be taken c take d taken
- 38 Watch out! You ..... yourself.  
a will have cut b are going to cut c are cutting d will cut
- 39 Take a coat to London next week because it ..... cold.  
a be b going to be c is going to be d would be
- 40 I think it ..... this afternoon.  
a will rain b is going to rain c is raining d will be raining
- 41 Don't be late for the bus because it ..... wait for you.  
a will b aren't going to c won't d don't will



- 44 I am sure I ..... this mountain soon.  
 a will be climbing b am going to climb c will climb  
 45 Tidy your room or I ..... let you go to the club.  
 a wouldn't b won't c couldn't d mustn't  
 46 Don't pick up the phone. I ..... it.  
 a answer b am answering c would answer d am going to answer  
 47 The sky is too dark, I ..... for a walk.  
 a won't be going b won't have gone c am not going to go d won't go  
 48 Look, this glass is cracked. It .....  
 a is going to break b is breaking c will break d will be breaking  
 49 Don't touch that dog. It ..... bite you.  
 a is b will c is going to d is being  
 50 How old are you? I ..... 16 on Saturday.  
 a am being b is going to be c will be d am  
 51 He is driving at breakneck speed. He ..... an accident.  
 a is going to have b will have c has d is having  
 52 I'm determined. I ..... and succeed. You will see.  
 a am trying b shall try c do try d try  
 53 In the future, most of our work ..... by machines.  
 a will be doing b has been done c will be done d will do  
 54 I ..... out tomorrow. I haven't decided yet.  
 a am going b will go c will be going d am going to go  
 55 After I have studied, I ..... TV.  
 a going to watch b watch c will watch d watches  
 56 I ..... there for you. Don't worry.  
 a am being b am going to be c will have been d will be  
 57 Some scientists believe that more people ..... seaweed in the future.  
 a eat b will eating c will be eating d are eating  
 58 He is going to visit us next week. This means that ..... next week.  
 a he has arranged to visit us b he has planned to visit us  
 c he has prepared to visit us d he has thought of visiting us  
 59 He is visiting us next week. This means that ..... next week.  
 a he has arranged to visit us b he has planned to visit us  
 c he has decided to visit us d he has promised to visit us

## Focus on

## Present Continuous &amp; Present Simple

- 60 We made all the arrangements; we ..... a wedding party.  
 a are going to give b give c will give d are giving  
 61 ..... to Canada tomorrow? - Yes, I have got the ticket and the visa.  
 a Do you travel b Are you travelling c You will travel d Are you going to travel  
 62 We have already made all the preparations. We ..... our sister's wedding party tomorrow.  
 a are giving b will give c are going to give d gave  
 63 Tomorrow I ..... a football match with my friend. I have phoned him.  
 a will watch b am watching c will be watching d watch

- 64 The play ..... at seven every evening.  
 a will begin b is going to begin c begins d is beginning  
 65 The school inspector ..... on Thursday.  
 a will come b is coming c is going to come d comes  
 66 Her wedding party ..... held next Sunday.  
 a is being b will be c is going to be d will have  
 67 I can't talk at the moment. I ..... my homework.  
 a do b will do c am doing d have done  
 68 What time ..... your plane take off?  
 a does b would c will d is  
 69 Seif and I ..... the final match at the stadium tomorrow. I wonder if you could join us.  
 a will watch b are watching c are going to watch d watch  
 70 We ..... a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?  
 a would have b are having c were having d have  
 71 The train to Aswan ..... at 7:30, will be late for an hour.  
 a leaves b leaving c is going to leave d will leave  
 72 According to the timetable the next bus ..... at 10 a.m.  
 a will move b moves c is going to move d is moving  
 73 I can't meet you tonight because I ..... my brother at the airport.  
 a had met b am meeting c will meet d going to meet  
 74 You ..... up all of those toys right now. This room is a mess!  
 a will have picked b will be picking c will pick d are going to pick  
 75 Mr Ali has an appointment with a dentist. He ..... a doctor next Monday.  
 a see b is seeing c saw d will see  
 76 Watch out! The car ..... you!  
 a is going to hit b is hitting c hits d will hit  
 77 A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It ..... busy there today!  
 a is being b was c is going to be d has been  
 78 I've enrolled on an English course. It ..... on Sunday next week.  
 a will start b is starting c is going to start d starts

## Focus on

## will, will be + ing &amp; will have + p.p

- 79 For the next year, Ahmed ..... on an engineering project in Alexandria.  
 a was working b will have worked c will be working d had been working  
 80 I can't play tennis with you this evening as I ..... an urgent task for hours.  
 a will be doing b can't be doing c should have done d will do  
 81 By 2050, I think that astronomers ..... new planets outside our solar system.  
 a will have found b find c have found d are finding  
 82 By next October, my father ..... a bigger house.  
 a will buy b would buy c will have bought d had bought  
 83 All next year, scientists ..... on an effective vaccine against COVID-19.  
 a have worked b will be working c will work d will have worked  
 84 My brother will go to the park when he ..... his homework  
 a finishes b had finished c finish d will finish





- I can't go to the cinema with you this evening because I ..... my lessons for tomorrow.  
 test.  
 a will revise b will be revising c had to revise d going to revise
- Our class ..... working in the laboratory all this afternoon.  
 a will b are going to c will be d be
- There's a train ..... at six o'clock tomorrow. I hope I will catch it.  
 a will leave b leaves c is going to leave d leaving
- In 2030, I ..... a teacher for 20 years.  
 a will be b am going to be c have been d will have been
- In next week's radio programme, we ..... to a famous scientist.  
 a talk b will be talking c talking d have talked
- In a few years' time, I think that all my friends ..... at university!  
 a will study b going to study c is studying d will be studying
- I can't come to the sports club next week because I ..... to Aswan.  
 a will travel b will be travelling c will travelling d will be traveled
- They ..... a new factory in this area by the end of 2030.  
 a will have built b will be building c will build d are building
- I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I ..... my homework.  
 a would be doing b will have done c will be doing d may do
- This time next year, I ..... at university.  
 a will study b will be studied c will be studying d will have studied
- He ..... sick for six days tomorrow.  
 a will be b are going to be c is d will have been
- By 2040, we hope that oil ..... replaced by clean energy.  
 a will have b will have been c will be d would have been
- I can't see the match tomorrow evening. I ..... for my English exams.  
 a will revise b will have revised c will be revising d revise
- At the end of this month, they ..... in their house for one year.  
 a are being b are going to be c will have been d will be
- Next month, I ..... for the company for six years.  
 a will have worked b will be working c am going to work d will work
- At five o'clock tomorrow, she ..... on a train to Alex.  
 a will be travelling b will have travelled c going to travel d travels
- Mother ..... the house work between 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. tomorrow.  
 a is doing b will have done c will be doing d will be
- A new bridge ..... here by the government by the end of this year.  
 a will build b will be building c will have been built d will have built
- In four years' time, she ..... her education.  
 a will be finished b will finish c will have finished d will have been finished

Focus on

## Various Exercises

- By next May, I ..... a new house.  
 a will build b am going to build c will have built d will be building



- The year 2025 ..... the four-hundredth anniversary of the founding of the university.  
 a is being b will have been c will be d is going to be
- The cup is on the edge of the table. It ..... fall.  
 a is going to b will c shall d being
- Our school ..... part in the sports competition next year.  
 a shall take b takes c is taking d going to take
- By five o'clock tonight, I ..... all my homework.  
 a finish b am finishing c will finish d 'll have finished
- Don't phone me now. I ..... a shower.  
 a have b will have had c will have d am having
- ..... me a favour, please?  
 a Will you do b Are you doing c Do you do d Are you going to do
- I can't meet you this evening. I ..... the shopping.  
 a am doing b do c have done d may do
- At ten o'clock tomorrow, Mr Ahmed ..... on a train to Beni Suef!  
 a travel b will have travelled c going to travel d will be travelling
- Don't be late. The bus ..... at exactly ten o'clock!  
 a leaves b going to leave c has left d left
- Mr Al Daifi ..... married next Sunday.  
 a will get b will have got c is getting d is going to get
- Perhaps I ..... him next week.  
 a will see b am seeing c am going to see d see
- She ..... to England next Monday. Everything is arranged.  
 a is flying b flies c fly d would fly
- It's arranged. We ..... to Alex this summer.  
 a will go b go c are going d may go
- Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. I ..... the kids to school.  
 a may drive b driving c drive d will be driving
- I've decided that I ..... her on Sunday.  
 a meet b 'm going to meet c 'll meet d would meet
- We won't have finished ..... 7 pm.  
 a at b by c for d in
- In the near future companies think simple operations ..... by robots.  
 a will be done b will be doing c will do d will have done
- People ..... electric cars until they have discovered a way for them to go longer distances without being charged.  
 a won't buy b won't have bought c won't be buying d won't be bought
- When I've fixed my computer, I ..... you with your research.  
 a will be helping b going to help c will have helped d will help





16. Next year, she .....  
 a is b is going to be c will be d has been  
 نستخدم هنا will لأن الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة في المستقبل.
- After he ..... his homework, he will call us.  
 a finish b has finished c had finished d will finish  
 نختار هنا زمن المضارع التام و ذلك لأن الجملة الثانية في زمن المستقبل.
- By 2030, she ..... her university studies.  
 a will have finished b will finish c is finishing d finishes  
 نختار زمن المستقبل التام لأن الجملة تبدأ ب by متبوعة بسنة في المستقبل.
- They ..... to Paris. They've bought the tickets.  
 a have flown b are flying c will fly d fly  
 نختار زمن المضارع المستمر لأن الحدث تم الترتيب له و الدليل شراء التذاكر tickets.
- The train to Aswan ..... tomorrow at 7.  
 a is leaving b will have left c has left d leaves  
 لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط مع الأحداث التي تتم وفقاً لجدول زمني مثل موعد القطار.
- Tomorrow at 7, I ..... a meeting with an important client.  
 a have b will have c will be having d have had  
 عندما نتحدث عن فعل سيكون مستمر في وقت معين في المستقبل tomorrow at 7 نستخدم مستقبل مستمر.
- They ..... football tomorrow. They've planned.  
 a are playing b are going to play c will play d play  
 نختار هنا are going to play لأنهم خططوا للعب plan.
- As soon as they have finished, they ..... us!  
 a will visit b are visiting c will have visited d visit  
 لاحظ عند وجود المضارع التام مع الروابط مثل after & as soon as نختار will.
- Next week, they ..... married for 10 years.  
 a will be b will have been c are going to be d are  
 نختار هنا المستقبل التام لنعر عن اكتمال حدث معين بحلول فترة زمنية في المستقبل next, for.
- The glass is cracked. I think it .....  
 a will be breaking b is breaking c is going to break d will break  
 نختار هنا is going to و ذلك لوجود دليل في الجملة.
- I think she ..... the exam. She is very clever.  
 a passes b is going to pass c will have passed d will pass  
 لاحظ هنا نختار will على الرغم من وجود دليل لأنه استخدم صفة دائمة clever كدليل.
- I can't meet you tomorrow at 3, I ..... for my English exam.  
 a will be studying b will study c will have studied d study  
 نختار هنا المستقبل المستمر لأن الحدث سيكون مستمر في المستقبل ووضح ذلك بأنه لن يستطيع مقابلة.

### Writing Vocabulary

blog	مدونة	argumentative essay	مقال جدلي	in addition	بالإضافة إلى
comment	تعليق	descriptive essay	مقال وصفي	as a result	ونتيجة لذلك
express	تعبير عن	narrative essay	مقال روائي	on a big scale	على نطاق واسع
expression	تعبير	expository essay	مقال تفسيري	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
complicated problem	مشكلة معقدة	persuasive essay	مقال اقناعي	on the whole	في المجمل
warning	تحذير	sentence	جملة	on balance	وبالتوازن
positive effects	الآثار الايجابية	phrase	عبارة	on average	في المتوسط
negative effects	الآثار السلبية	paragraph	فقرة	on one hand	من جهة
advantages (merits - pros)	مزايا	disadvantages (demerits-cons)	عيوب	on the other hand	من جهة أخرى

### Vocabulary for Translation

principles	مبادئ	disputes	نزاعات / خلافات	self-reliance	الاعتماد على الذات
shortage	نقص	eliminate	يقضي على	self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتي
factors	عوامل	relations	علاقات	self-control	ضبط النفس
organize	ينظم	service	خدمة	self-sacrifice	التضحية بالذات
host	يستضيف	ignore	يتجاهل	attitude	سلوك / اتجاه / موقف
mass media	وسائل الإعلام	talent	موهبة	aim to / at	يهدف إلى
revolution	ثورة	reclaim	يستصلح	be aware of	على وعي به
destruction	تخريب	require	يتطلب	tolerance	تسامح
value	قيمة	enable	يمكن	exert	يبدل
policy	السياسة	rate	معدل	developing countries	الدول النامية
benefits	فوائد	crime	جريمة		

### Chapter three

that's your lot	لن تحصل على المزيد	put a finger on	يحدد	dusty	مغبر
gloomy	كئيب	apprenticeship	تدريب	celebration	احتفال
spider	عنكبوت	wrap	يلف / يلف	skin	جلد
web	شبكة	pale	شاحب	argument	جدال / خلاف
apprentice	صبي / متعلم	elderly	كبير السن	realise	يردك

أحرص على اقتناء أقوى كتب  
المراجعات للثانوية العامة

التحصيل



## 1 argumentative essay مقال جدلي

Read the comments which followed a blog called 'A world without technology' Eduardo

Posted 8 Sept 2021.17.30

Technology is very important for us here in Mexico City. We **depend on** smartphones, tablets, computers and especially the internet. I am lucky to have a computer in my house, because my father doesn't live with us, so it helps me keep in touch with him. **On a bigger scale**, technology has helped save lives in Mexico. We have very advanced warning systems which give people more time to escape to safety if an earthquake is coming. **On the other hand**, cyber security has become a big issue. Computer hackers can cause serious harm to individuals and organisations. Important information can be stolen. There have been many cases where this has happened in Mexico, and I'm sure there will be more in the future.

Posted 9 Sept 2021.13.50

Hadia 123

Technology surrounds us. It's everywhere. It's hard to imagine a life without technology. But of course, we could live without it. Only forty years ago people survived without smart phones or the internet. **On the whole**, I think technology can be dangerous because people can become addicted to it. They forget about simple things like walking in nature and being with friends.

Posted 11 Sept 2021.16.30

Joat 19

I don't agree with the last comment. The benefits of technology in medicine are obvious. People's lives are saved every day because of new technology in hospitals! In the future, it'll be even more important. It will help us discover new cures for lots of diseases. Of course, technology has some negative effects, but **on balance**, we can't live without it now.

Log in or register to post comments.

## 2 argumentative essay مقال جدلي

### The advantages and disadvantages to evolving technology

Introduction

Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger screens or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. **On a bigger scale**, computers in businesses, at airports and in almost every organisation become more and more powerful. We now **depend on** everything becoming better, bigger and faster.

**On the one hand**, this makes things easier for all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good as cinema screens. Mobile phones mean that you can be connected to the internet anywhere, so you can always find out information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

**On the other hand**, new technology is very bad for the environment. We all want to buy the latest phones, televisions or computer games, but that often means throwing away the old ones. You can recycle some parts of old equipment, but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

**On the whole**, it is good that technology changes. We all want to have things that can improve our everyday lives. **On balance**, however, I think that we have to find a way to use new technology on old equipment. It is terrible that we have to throw away good equipment just because it does not use the latest technology. If we could build phones, TVs and computers that could last for decades, we could have a cleaner, greener world.

Conclusion

body paragraph

Beyond image

## تعريف المقال

An essay is a series of paragraphs that talks about one subject.

المقال هو مجموعة من الفقرات التي تتحدث عن موضوع واحد.

## انواع المقال

descriptive

It describes the topic.

هو يصف الموضوع.

It appeals to the senses of touch, smell, sight, sound, and taste.

يجذب الحواس اللمس، والشم، والبصر، والصوت، والذوق.

It may not follow grammatical rules.

قد لا تتبع القواعد النحوية.

narrative

It narrates a story.

يروي قصة.

It includes a sequence of topic sentences.

يتضمن تسلسل في جمل الموضوع.

expository

It defines something or gives instructions.

إنه يعرف شيئاً ما أو يعطي تعليمات.

It explains a process to the reader.

يفسر موضوع للقارئ.

It needs research and the writer's knowledge.

يحتاج للبحث ومعرفة الكاتب.

persuasive

It seeks to make the reader agree with the writer's point of view.

يسعى إلى جعل القارئ يتفق مع وجهة نظر الكاتب.

It needs facts on the topic.

يحتاج حقائق حول الموضوع.

argumentative

It expresses an extended argument for a particular thesis statement.

يعبر عن حجة موسعة لبيان أطروحة معينة.

The author takes a clearly defined stance on their subject and builds up an evidence-based case for it.

يتخذ المؤلف موقفاً محدداً بخصوص موضوعه ويزينه بالأدلة.

## The steps of writing

خطوات الكتابة

0 Brainstorming العصف الذهني

Write down ideas about the topic. اكتب الأفكار حول الموضوع.

0 Outlining الخطوط العريضة

Organize your ideas. نظم أفكارك.

0 Drafting الصياغة

Turn your ideas into sentences and paragraphs. حول أفكارك إلى جمل وفقرات.

0 Revising المراجعة

Change and improve the content of your writing. قم بتغيير وتحسين محتوى كتابتك.

0 Editing التحرير

Correct grammar, capitalization, punctuation, and spelling errors. صحح الأخطاء النحوية والكتابة بالأحرف الكبيرة وعلامات الترقيم والأخطاء الإملائية.



- 1 A/An ..... essay provides a detailed sensory description of something.  
 a narrative b descriptive c persuasive d expository
- 2 A/An ..... essay seeks to make the reader agree with the writer's point of view.  
 a narrative b descriptive c argumentative d persuasive
- 3 A/An ..... essay defines something or gives instructions.  
 a narrative b descriptive c argumentative d expository
- 4 A/An ..... essay narrates a story.  
 a narrative b descriptive c argumentative d expository
- 5 "Describe what it might be like to live on another planet." This is a title for a/an ..... essay.  
 a descriptive b narrative c persuasive d expository
- 6 A/An ..... essay is the suitable type when you want to write about "What is the greatest challenge facing young people today?"  
 a expository b narrative c persuasive d argumentative
- 7 A/An ..... essay is the suitable type when you want to write about "A situation I will never forget".  
 a expository b narrative c persuasive d descriptive
- 8 "Write a story about your first day of school." This is a title for a/an ..... essay.  
 a descriptive b narrative c persuasive d expository
- 9 A/An ..... essay is the suitable type when you want to write about "Steps to learn English".  
 a expository b narrative c persuasive d descriptive
- 10 A/An ..... essay is a type of essay that the writer seeks to make the reader agree with the writer's point of view.  
 a descriptive b narrative c persuasive d expository
- 11 A/An ..... essay is a type of essay that appeals to the senses of touch, smell, sight, sound, and taste.  
 a descriptive b narrative c persuasive d expository
- 12 "Explain how the invention of the printing press changed European society in the 15th century." This is a title for a/an ..... essay.  
 a descriptive b narrative c persuasive d expository
- 13 A narrative essay is the one that .....  
 a provides a clear, focused explanation of a topic.  
 b presents an extended evidence-based argument.  
 c tells a story about a personal experience or an imaginative one.  
 d provides a detailed sensory description of something.
- 14 The following is part of a/an ..... essay.  
 Stanley Bridge is one of the most famous architectural works in Alexandria. It is 400 metres long and 30 metres wide. It has four towers designed in the Islamic style used in the royal palace of Al Montazah. The Bridge was built with the aim of enlarging the Alexandria beachside and decreasing traffic in that area.  
 a argumentative b narrative c persuasive d descriptive

- 1 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a The next train to Cairo will be at 7.  
 b The next train to Cairo is at 7.  
 c The next train to Cairo arrive at 7.  
 d The next train to Cairo is going to be at 7.
- 2 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a After she finishes her lunch, she will have met some friends.  
 b After she finish her lunch, she will meet some friends.  
 c After she has finished her lunch, she will have met some friends.  
 d After she has finished her lunch, she will meet some friends.
- 3 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I promise I have helped you.  
 b I promise I am going to help you.  
 c I promise I am helping you.  
 d I promise I will help you.
- 4 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a They didn't leave until they have signed the contract.  
 b They don't leave until they have signed the contract.  
 c They won't leave until they have signed the contract.  
 d They will leave until they have signed the contract.
- 5 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a By next June, he will be working here for 20 years.  
 b By next June, he will work here for 20 years.  
 c By next June, he will be worked here for 20 years.  
 d By next June, he will have worked here for 20 years.
- 6 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I am starving, I think I am going to have a sandwich.  
 b I am starving, I think I am having a sandwich.  
 c I am starving, I think I will have a sandwich.  
 d I am starving, I think I will be having a sandwich.
- 7 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a By the time he leaves the house, he will have checked his email.  
 b By the time he left the house, he will have checked his email.  
 c By the time he had left the house, he will have checked his email.  
 d By the time he leaves the house, he will be checked his email.
- 8 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I am visiting my family tomorrow. I've called them.  
 b I am going to visit my family tomorrow. I've called them.  
 c I visit my family tomorrow. I've called them.  
 d I have visited my family tomorrow. I've called them.
- 9 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a From 5 to 9 tomorrow, I will study English.  
 b From 5 to 9 tomorrow, I will be studying English.  
 c From 5 to 9 tomorrow, I will have studied English.  
 d From 5 to 9 tomorrow, I am going to study English.



4 Creative thinking, which is necessary for success in life, is the process by which individuals bring new ideas.

التفكير الإبداعي، الضروري للنجاح في الحياة، هو العملية التي يجلب فيها العنسان جديدة.

5 Caring for people with special needs and providing them with a decent life is a national duty that individuals and the government must do together.

العناية بالذي احتياجات الخاصة وتوفير الحياة الكريمة لهم واجب وعلى الأفراد والحكومة القيام به معا.

6 The government establishes projects to increase national production and encourage the private sector to invest their capital.

تؤيد الحكومة بإنشاء مشاريع لزيادة الإنتاج المحلي، وتشجيع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال.

7 We use the best methods to raise our young children because they are our hope for the near future and the basis for the progress of our beloved country.

نستخدم أفضل الطرق لربط أطفالنا الصغار لأنهم أملنا في المستقبل القريب وأساس تقدم بلدنا الجديد.

8 Learning foreign languages and computer skills is a necessity for every learner at the present time to obtain a suitable job.

يتعلم اللغات الأجنبية ومهارات الكمبيوتر ضرورة لكل متعلم في الوقت الحالي للحصول على وظيفة مناسبة.

9 Success doesn't come by chance. Luck may support you once, but sustainable success requires effort, good planning, and cooperation with others.

النجاح لا يأتي بالصدفة، قد يدعمك الحظ مرة، لكن النجاح المستدام يتطلب جهدا وجهدا مع الآخرين.

10 Some people prefer watching films to reading. Compared to reading, watching films is a passive way of spending time.

يفضل بعض الناس مشاهدة الأفلام على مشاهدة الأفلام طريقة سلبية لقضاء الوقت.

11 The government encourages the private sector to invest their capital in order to increase national production.

الحكومة تشجع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال لزيادة الإنتاج الوطني.

12 We must take steps to improve the living standards of our people and to create a better future for our children.

علينا اتخاذ خطوات لتحسين مستويات المعيشة لشعبنا ولخلق مستقبل أفضل لطفولنا.

13 Sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation, sports play a vital role in our life. Through them we acquire many virtues such as cooperation.

الرياضة تلعب دورا هاما في حياتنا. من خلالها نحصل على العديد من الفضائل مثل التعاون.

14 The government encourages the private sector to invest their capital in order to increase national production.

الحكومة تشجع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال لزيادة الإنتاج الوطني.

15 We must take steps to improve the living standards of our people and to create a better future for our children.

علينا اتخاذ خطوات لتحسين مستويات المعيشة لشعبنا ولخلق مستقبل أفضل لطفولنا.

16 The government encourages the private sector to invest their capital in order to increase national production.

الحكومة تشجع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال لزيادة الإنتاج الوطني.

17 We must take steps to improve the living standards of our people and to create a better future for our children.

علينا اتخاذ خطوات لتحسين مستويات المعيشة لشعبنا ولخلق مستقبل أفضل لطفولنا.

18 The government encourages the private sector to invest their capital in order to increase national production.

الحكومة تشجع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال لزيادة الإنتاج الوطني.

19 We must take steps to improve the living standards of our people and to create a better future for our children.

علينا اتخاذ خطوات لتحسين مستويات المعيشة لشعبنا ولخلق مستقبل أفضل لطفولنا.

20 The government encourages the private sector to invest their capital in order to increase national production.

الحكومة تشجع القطاع الخاص على استثمار رأس المال لزيادة الإنتاج الوطني.

21 We must take steps to improve the living standards of our people and to create a better future for our children.

علينا اتخاذ خطوات لتحسين مستويات المعيشة لشعبنا ولخلق مستقبل أفضل لطفولنا.



- 1 If people are ..... , they are unhappy and have no hope. **cheerful**
- 2 Many families fail to ..... the importance of a well-balanced diet. **hint**
- 3 The ..... preys on small flies and other insects using its web. **snake**
- 4 It's impossible to put a / an ..... on the number of homeless people in London. **finger**
- 5 He ..... a bandage carefully around my injured wrist. **removed**
- 6 We're having a small ..... for Dad's birthday. **celebrity**
- 7 You're looking ..... - are you feeling well? **good**
- 8 Don't let that glue come into contact with your ..... ! It hurts to remove. **leather**
- 9 Doctors recommend that young children and the ..... get vaccinated. **eldest**
- 10 Those involved in the fraud created a ..... of fake companies to hide their activities. **lists**
- 11 I worked as a / an ..... electrician for 18 months. **apprentice**
- 12 The two girls ..... while walking home from school. No one could find them. **ran**
- 13 It takes years, maybe a lifetime, to heal a ..... heart. **bad**
- 14 Unfair bosses and ..... customers make us unhappy on the job. **rude**
- 15 My father believed that if I got a / an ..... to a proper trade I'd be financially secure for life. **work**

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Basel Rashid, who was a famous detective<sup>(1)</sup>, working for businessmen to protect them and solve mysteries<sup>(2)</sup> related to their work, had finished working on a crime<sup>(3)</sup> in Aswan and was out to go home on the Spanish Train. When Basel got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for the time of year. Soon after the train had left Aswan, a wealthy<sup>(4)</sup> businessman, Mr. Mourad asked Basel to protect him because he believed his life was in danger<sup>(5)</sup>. Although Mourad offered Basel a lot of money to do this, the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him. During the night the train had to stop because of heavy rain. The next morning, Mourad was found dead: he had been murdered<sup>(6)</sup>. Had someone got on the train and killed him?

Now Basel believed Mourad's story and, together with a doctor, who was also on the train, he started work to solve the crime. The two men soon discovered<sup>(7)</sup> that Mourad had a secret identity<sup>(8)</sup>. He was not a businessman,

but a criminal<sup>(9)</sup>, who was hated by many people. After examining<sup>(10)</sup> the train and Mourad's body, Basel realised that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 suspects<sup>(11)</sup>. One by one, Basel discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate Mourad. Together, they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part<sup>(12)</sup> in the murder. This was why the Spanish<sup>(13)</sup> train had been so full on that journey.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
- 1 Basel found out there were 13 suspects because .....  
a Mourad told him while dying  
b he checked their identities  
c he knew they hated Mourad  
d the doctor told him so
- 2 The central idea of the story is " ..... ".  
a Criminals would help to protect each other  
b Crime would be committed by the help of the police  
c Criminals always face their fears of death  
d The Spanish train mysterious crime
- 3 Mourad thought he was certainly in danger so .....  
a he was suffering from heart problems  
b he asked Basel for help  
c the detective warned him not to take that train  
d the doctor had examined him the day before
- 4 The sentence that can summarise the last paragraph is .....  
a identifying who Mr Mourad really was and his real job  
b protecting the other passengers from the murders  
c discovering Mourad's secret passport and his work as a spy  
d finding out Mourad was wrong when he asked the detective's help
- 5 Basel did not want to help Mr Mourad .....  
a to take part in his murder  
b to kill the other criminals  
c because he was in Aswan  
d because he worked as a policeman
- 6 Although Basel refused to help Mr Mourad, he .....  
a was right not to help Mr Mourad  
b suspected few of the passengers  
c According to the passage, one must ..... the others when they ask.  
d help
- 7 According to the passage, one must ..... the others when they ask.  
a ignore  
b because he was on a secret mission  
c to arrest people who killed Mourad  
d helped the doctor to reach the truth
- 8 Although Basel refused to help Mr Mourad, he .....  
a regretted helping Mr Mourad  
b encouraged  
c defeat

اقرأ على الأسئلة الأولى كتب  
الواجبات للثانوية العامة







Exercise 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I don't like the man.
  - a Personally
  - b Theoretically
  - c Terribly
  - d Fantasticly
- 2 She looks ..... a famous film star.
  - a like
  - b similar
  - c same
  - d later
- 3 This television program gives you the ..... news.
  - a as
  - b like
  - c least
  - d whole
- 4 I want you to tell me the ..... truth.
  - a lost
  - b exactly
  - c really
  - d be able
- 5 When will you ..... come and see us in our new house?
  - a all
  - b be able to
  - c able to
  - d too
- 6 I only want ..... little sugar in my tea, please.
  - a can
  - b the
  - c such
  - d doctors
- 7 She always said that when she grew up she wanted to be .....
  - a a
  - b a doctor
  - c the doctor
  - d doctor
- 8 There is a new television programme called: '..... wants to be a millionaire?'.
  - a doctor
  - b Who
  - c Who
  - d Whose
- 9 I expect you think I'm ..... because I don't understand that.
  - a Which
  - b What
  - c deaf
  - d crazy
- 10 I expect you think I'm ..... what a politician says nowadays?
  - a dumb
  - b stupid
  - c believe
  - d credit
- 11 Does anyone honestly ..... to shout at someone.
  - a discover
  - b think
  - c costume
  - d custom
- 12 It is considered a bad ..... to shout at someone.
  - a habits
  - b ways
  - c costume
  - d He will speak
- 13 Which of these tenses is Present Simple? It is .....
  - a He spoke
  - b He is speaking
  - c He speaks
  - d He will speak
- 14 Don't worry, there's no need to answer ..... I'm not in a hurry.
  - a firstly
  - b fairly
  - c immediately
  - d easily
- 15 As of now we still don't know if we will be ..... to fulfill our contract.
  - a reliable
  - b able
  - c capable
  - d enable
- 16 At ....., I think she's very pretty.
  - a little
  - b lost
  - c less
  - d least
- 17 Jill: 'Look at all the work I've done, aren't you impressed?' Frank: .....
  - a I am amazing!
  - b I am amazed!
  - c I amaze!
  - d I am being amazed!
- 18 That is the school in ..... I had my primary education.
  - a which
  - b where
  - c whose
  - d when
- 19 Every week I work five days and I get two days .....
  - a offer
  - b off
  - c not
  - d no
- 20 I like it ..... it rains.
  - a when
  - b who
  - c why
  - d whom
- 21 This is ..... I want to be when I grow up.
  - a why
  - b when
  - c which
  - d what
- 22 There are eight pets in my house. Six are cats and ..... are dogs.
  - a others
  - b another
  - c the other
  - d the others
- 23 Maria is married ..... my cousin.
  - a with
  - b for
  - c to
  - d into
- 24 I asked you ..... one of these shoes you think would go with my outfit.
  - a whose
  - b who
  - c whom
  - d which

Finish the following dialogue:

between a tourist and a passerby

- 1 Excuse me, sir, would you kindly tell me the way to the pyramids?
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 2 You should take this bus to its terminus.
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 3 About half an hour. Haven't you been to the pyramids before?
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 4 I hope you will like them. They are great.
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 5 At the Sheraton.
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 6 I see you have got a camera with you.
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 7 Very much. Photographs will remind me of my visit.
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 8 How do you like my country?
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 9 I like it very much.
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff
- 10 I wish .....
  - a Tourist
  - b Sheriff
  - c Tourist
  - d Sheriff

Translate into Arabic:

A national conference was held by the government to discuss the future of economy in Egypt.

Rationalization of consumption and increasing production lead to raising the standard of living and improving income.

Press has a great role in forming the public awareness concerning economic and social issues.

Translate into English:

ان زراعة الصنوبر وبناء المدن الحديثة يملئ الاقتصاد القومي ويحل الكثير من المشاكل الاجتماعية.

يعتبر مترو الأنفاق واحدا من اعظم اللوجستيات الهندسية وهو يساهم مساهمة عظيمة في حل مشكلة الازدحام في القاهرة الكبرى.

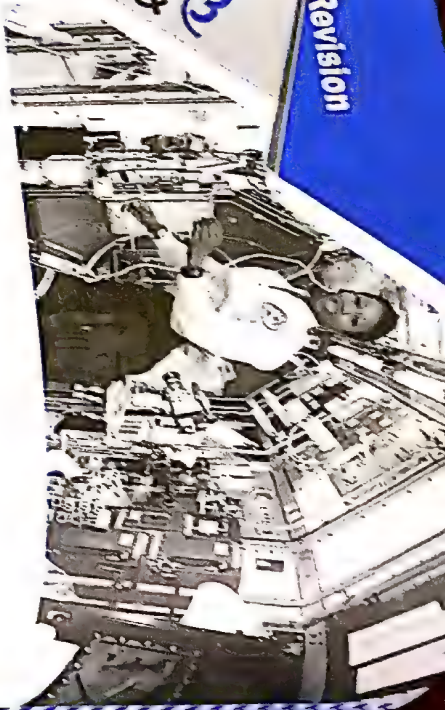
ان التزايد السكاني في مصر قد ادى الى الكثير من المشكلات الناجمة عن الزيادة السكانية وازدحام المرور والبطالة.

Write a paragraph of (120 words) about "Modern technology".

Enrich your language

English Language					
conference	مؤتمر	press	صحافة	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
economy	الاقتصاد	awareness	وعي	social issues	قضايا اجتماعية
rationalization	ترشيد	concerning	فيما يتعلق	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
consumption	الاستهلاك	production	الإنتاج	contribute	تساهم
income	دخل	achievements	الإنجازات	traffic jam	ازدحام المرور





## Main Vocabulary

link	رابطه / ارتباط	career	حياة مهنية	electric-powered	بدا بالكهرباء
astronaut	رائد فضاء	signal-hopping	التفريز الإشعاعي (تغير من التردد)	mechanical	ميكانيكي
astronomer	عالم فلك	wireless	لاسلكي	racing cars	سيارات سباق
award	مُنحة / جائزة / بيشع	communication	اتصال	advert	إعلان
contribution	مساهمة	chemist	كيميائي / كيميائية	competition	منافسة
promote	يدعم / يعزز / يروج	radioactivity	اشعاع إشعاعي	advance	تقدم
immerse	يغمر / يغمس	objective	موضوعي	cost	تكلفة / يكلف
inspiring	ملهم	knowledge	معرفة	receive	يستلم
title	عنوان / لقب	develop	يطور	take off	تأخذ إقلاع
physicist	فيزيائي	recommend	يوصي / يوصي	consequently	نتيجة لذلك
prejudice	ظلم / تمييز / تمييز	skill	مهارة	due to	بسبب
achievement	إنجاز	spaceship	فضائية فضاء	finally	أخيراً
impressive	مثير	mission	مهمة	personally	شخصياً
purpose	غرض	passengers	ركاب	secondly	ثانياً
theatre	مسرح	training	تدريب	conclude	يختتم / يستنتج
focus	تركيز / يركز	trip	رحلة	whilst	بينما / ولكن
attention	الاهتمام	variety	تنوع / تشكيلة	feel about	يشعر تجاه
target	هدف	in common	مشترك	find out	يكشف / يكتشف
audience	جمهور	computing	الحوسبة	travel into	يسافر في
presentation	تقديم / عرض	engineering	الهندسة	space	الفضاء
creative	بدیع	developer	مطور	earth	الأرض / كوكب
wooden	خشب	senior	أعلى مرتبة / رئيس	play	مسرحية / يلعب
puppet	دمية	software	برامج	famous	مشهور
musical	موسيقى	programming	برمجة	influence	تأثير / يؤثر
actress	ممثلة	basis	أساس		

## Reading

### DIGITHEATRE REVIEW

Scientists from history come to life in a new online show involving wooden puppets, music and the show called *Jina and the Stem sisters*.

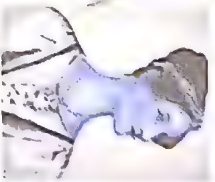
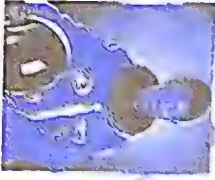
The show tells the story of some of the most inspiring women in science and mathematics. In the story, Jina is on a journey and gets lost in the forest. There she meets women who have made an important contribution to the history of STEM. The women include Hedy Lamarr, who was both an actress and inventor. Whilst at the top of her film career, she invented a technology called signal hopping, which later was the basis for all modern wireless communication, including that found in mobile phones.

Other women that Jina meets are Marie Curie, a physicist and chemist famous for her research and experiments on radioactivity, and Mae Jemison, an American engineer and astronaut who was the first woman to win the Nobel Prize award in two different fields.

Mae Jemison was the first black woman to travel into space. The scientists share their knowledge with Jina and help her to develop key skills to become a future STEM expert herself. On her journey, Jina also meets computer scientist Ada Lovelace and astronomer who show Jina the stars.

The show has been created for schools. It will hopefully encourage young people to find out more about these inspiring women in science and how they overcame the difficulties and prejudice in their way.

"The puppets were beautiful and completely immerse me in the characters", Mona, aged 12. "I definitely recommend it."



### FOCUS ON JOBS

#### CV

Name: Sara Ahmed

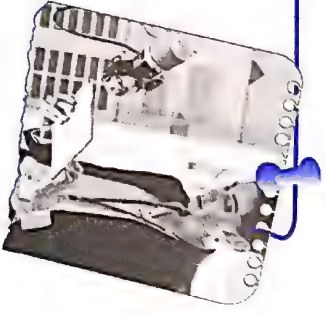
Education: Degree in Computing and Electronics

Engineering PhD in Swarm Robotics

Job: Senior developer, ESB Robotics

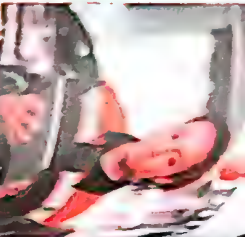
Duties: Developing software for robots

Biggest achievement: developed a new robot which will teach young people about programming





**Name:** Amani Satwat  
**Education:** Degree in mechanical engineering  
**Job:** Car engineer, Mahindra Racing  
**Duties:** Prepares cars for race days  
**Biggest achievement:** made a contribution to development of electric-powered racing cars



### Competition time

Do you dream of becoming a journalist? If so, enter our competition to win the chance see your story in our magazine. If you've got a fascinating story to report from your local area, we want to hear from you.

Here are some top tips from our Editor to get you started.

The winning story will be published in In the News, Find out more: [www.inthenewsnews.com](http://www.inthenewsnews.com)

#### Top tips for writing a news story

- Present a view which is **objective**.
- Include the key facts, and make sure you check them.
- Try to avoid any **prejudice**.
- Don't include information that is inaccurate (not correct).
- Be careful not to include **confusing** figures.
- Interview people involved to get different **opinions**.

ادرس على افضل اولى كتب  
 المراجعة للثانية المتوسطة



17 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 We think that the person who won the quiz is a ..... He looked up the answers online, which was not allowed.  
 (a) **chat** (b) **bias** (c) **cheat** (d) **sign**
- 2 You must be ..... of yourself, you have made a silly mistake!  
 (a) **proud** (b) **pleased** (c) **offend** (d) **sign**
- 3 The ..... of some planets in our solar system is rocky.  
 (a) **impact** (b) **face** (c) **scar** (d) **surface**
- 4 It is a ..... to think that women always do housework.  
 (a) **prejudice** (b) **stereotype** (c) **type** (d) **broden**
- 5 What is the best ..... for a headache?  
 (a) **cause** (b) **treatment** (c) **illness** (d) **surgeon**
- 6 People who leak books and join in ..... are punished for their crime.  
 (a) **piracy** (b) **pirates** (c) **cheat** (d) **chat**
- 7 While I ..... dinner, someone knocked on the door.  
 (a) **had** (b) **was having** (c) **did have** (d) **am having**
- 8 Doctors keep the health ..... of all their patients, so they know what illnesses they have had in the past.  
 (a) **paper** (b) **records** (c) **placements** (d) **figures**
- 9 After he had examined the athlete, the doctor ..... him permission to join the competition.  
 (a) **gave** (b) **given** (c) **had given** (d) **gives**
- 10 The train ..... before we arrived at the station.  
 (a) **had left** (b) **has left** (c) **was leaving** (d) **will leave**
- 11 Mr Ali ..... at a shop for ten years before he got a job at the bank.  
 (a) **has worked** (b) **is working** (c) **had been working** (d) **is working**
- 12 The bridge over the valley is built on a ..... scale than the one over the river.  
 (a) **big** (b) **bigger** (c) **biggest** (d) **the biggest**
- 13 When the bus plunged off the bridge, it was the ..... experience of my life. We were lucky that nobody was hurt.  
 (a) **most shocking** (b) **shocking** (c) **more shocking** (d) **less shocking**
- 14 For the next year, Ahmed ..... on an engineering project in Alexandria.  
 (a) **was working** (b) **will have worked** (c) **will be working** (d) **had been working**
- 15 By 2050, I think that astronomers ..... new planets outside our solar system.  
 (a) **will have found** (b) **find** (c) **have found** (d) **are finding**
- 16 We won't be able to live on Mars until we ..... enough water there.  
 (a) **will find** (b) **have found** (c) **will be finding** (d) **found**
- 17 I felt really sick ..... the party, so I went home.  
 (a) **While** (b) **when** (c) **during** (d) **on**
- 18 She has made a great contribution to social work in her neighbourhood. Contribution here is a synonym for .....  
 (a) **deprivation** (b) **donation** (c) **estimation** (d) **relation**



Hatshepsut's main contribution to ancient Egypt? What was her main contribution to ancient Egypt? Her statues built.

- 16 she brought peace and wealth to the country.  
 17 she helped women become pharaohs.  
 18 she was a female stereotype  
 19 she was of the following do we not learn about Punt from the text?  
 20 Which of the following do we not learn about Punt from the text?  
 21 Many trees grew there.  
 22 It was a rich country.  
 23 It was a rich country.  
 24 How could Hatshepsut afford to build so much during her rule?  
 25 She improved trade with other countries.  
 26 She won wars with other countries.  
 27 She planted trees from other countries.  
 28 She had many statues made of herself.  
 29 We know about the statues that were made of Hatshepsut?  
 30 What do we know about the statues that were made of Hatshepsut?  
 31 They are unusual.  
 32 They are in a style that people expect.  
 33 They are more impressive than other statues.  
 34 They are in a very unpopular style.  
 35 They are in a very unpopular style.  
 36 Why you think many of ancient Egypt's older monuments had been damaged before Hatshepsut's rule?  
 37 Why you think many of ancient Egypt's older monuments had been damaged before Hatshepsut's rule?  
 38 In what ways is Hatshepsut a good role model for women today?  
 39 In what ways is Hatshepsut a good role model for women today?  
 40 According to the article, gold, valuable stones and animals were.....

1

Ⓐ sold to African countries  
 Ⓑ brought to Egypt  
 Ⓒ restored before the reign of Hatshepsut  
 Ⓓ people consider Deir el-Bahri one of the wonders of the ancient world. Wonders is

similar in meaning to **marvels** is

**a** obstacles      **b** myths      **c** marvels      **d** superstitions

10 Which of the following is incorrect according to the passage?

**a** Not many women had become pharaohs of ancient Egypt before Hatshepsut  
**b** Hatshepsut improved trade with other countries, built many amazing buildings and made wars with others during her reign.  
**c** Hatshepsut was the first female pharaoh of Egypt.  
**d** Hatshepsut in many of the world's greatest museums

- Ⓒ We can see the statues made for Hatshepsut in many of the temples today.
- Ⓓ Thutmose III was Hatshepsut's stepson.
- Ⓔ We can see the mummy of Hatshepsut.....
- Ⓕ at the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization
- Ⓖ at the Temple of Africa

Ⓐ in East of Africa  
 Ⓑ in the temples at Beni Hassan  
 Ⓒ at a museum in Punt  
 Ⓓ Trade with other countries ..... during Hatshepsut's rule.  
 Ⓐ flourished  
 Ⓑ declined  
 Ⓒ stopped  
 Ⓓ was the same as  
 Ⓐ Hatshepsut ..... during her reign.  
 Ⓑ brought wealth to the country  
 Ⓒ destroyed her built  
 Ⓓ was the same as







# Unit

## Taking care of ourselves



### الأهداف العامة للوحدة Objectives

**Reading** An article about burnout, an excerpt from the poem *Suppose* by Phoebe Carey  
**Writing** An email to a friend to offer help; an essay about changes you have experienced in your life  
**Listening** Voice messages about well-being  
**Speaking** Discussion to find solutions for mental health problems  
**Language Model** Verbs: Making suggestions  
**Life skills** Self-management; Resilience

## 1 Main Vocabulary

الإنجليزية	العربية	الفرنسية	اللاتينية
well-being	صحة / رفاهية	bien-être	physical
frown(v)	يتحجب / يتعبد / يهبط	se soulever	mind map
pout	تجعد / تجعد / تجعد	se soulever	negative(ad)
burnout	التعب / الإرهاق / التفتت	se soulever	regular(ad)
scold(v)	يتعبد / يتعبد	se soulever	situation
cope with	يتعامل مع / يتعامل مع	se soulever	connection
alter	يتغير / يتغير / يتغير	se soulever	benefit
self-care	العناية بالذات	se soulever	importance
self-management	إدارة الذات	se soulever	brainstorm
stress	توتر / ضغط / تفتت	se soulever	consider
stressed	يتوتر / يتوتر / يتوتر	se soulever	focus
stressful	تحت ضغط / تحت ضغط / تحت ضغط	se soulever	set up
time management	إدارة الوقت	se soulever	signs
mental health	الصحة العقلية	se soulever	emotions
frustrated	محبطة / محبطة	se soulever	reduce
experience(v)(n)	تجربة / تجربة / تجربة	se soulever	perfectly(ad)
resilience	مرونة / مرونة	se soulever	understand
suppose	يتصور / يتصور	se soulever	pressure
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	se soulever	lonely
clear off	يتحجب / يتحجب	se soulever	specific
anxious	قلق / قلق	se soulever	category
promote	يشجع / يشجع / يشجع	se soulever	poem
exhaustion(n)	إرهاق / إرهاق	se soulever	suffer
exhausted(ad)	مريض / مريض	se soulever	solutions

## Part 1 Reading & Listening

## Additional Vocabulary

الفرنسية	العربية	الإنجليزية	اللاتينية
burnout(ad)	تفتت / تفتت	activities	download
overwhelmed(ad)	متعب / متعب	compare	upload
overloaded(ad)	متعب / متعب	explain	amount
overworked	متعب / متعب	order	difficulties
overdone	متعب / متعب	normally	necessary
overfull	متعب / متعب	choice	group
overfull(ad)	متعب / متعب	real(ad)	behave
overfull	متعب / متعب	conversations	list
overfull	متعب / متعب	cause	project
overfull	متعب / متعب	particular	lunchtime
overfull	متعب / متعب	effect	nearly
overfull	متعب / متعب	position	exercise
overfull	متعب / متعب	revision	memo
overfull	متعب / متعب	surprise	break
overfull	متعب / متعب	follow	expect
overfull	متعب / متعب	country	dreams
overfull	متعب / متعب	routine	essay
overfull	متعب / متعب	reason	energy
overfull	متعب / متعب	information	mark
overfull	متعب / متعب	result	diary
overfull	متعب / متعب	thinking	final
overfull	متعب / متعب	whether	decision
overfull	متعب / متعب	events	behaviour
overfull	متعب / متعب	improve	register
overfull	متعب / متعب	organise	avoid
overfull	متعب / متعب	accept	male
overfull	متعب / متعب	weather	

## Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	meaning	Synonym	Antonym
burnout	إرهاق	exhaustion - tiredness	refreshment - relaxation
well-being	سلامة	good	suffering - misery - unhealthiness
stress	توتر	pressure - tension - strain	comfort - consolation
pout	تجعد	frown - grimace	laugh - smile
promote	يشجع	advance - upgrade - raise	reduce - degrade - lower
frustrated	محبطة	disappointed - unfulfilled	pleased - content
anxious	قلق	afraid - nervous - scared	bold - brave - confident
grateful	ممتن	thankful - pleased	rude - ungrateful



### 3 Prepositions

concentrate	on	يركّز على	aware	of	مدرك لـ
focus	on	يركّز على	afraid	of	خائف من
cope	with	يتعامل مع	think	about	يتفكر في
deal	with	يتعامل مع	talk	about	يتحدث عن
happy	with	سعيد بـ	know	about	يعرف عن
give	up	يتنازل عن / يستسلم	reason	for	سبب
meet	up	يقتابل / يلتقي مع	ask	for	يسأل
stay	up	يسهر	dressed	for	يكون ملابسة
good at		جيد في	write down		يكتب
clear off		يُصرف / يفتش	at the weekend		في نهاية الأسبوع
suffer from		يعاني من	at the bottom of		في قاع

### 4 Expressions & Idioms

making suggestions	have problems with	تواجه مشاكل في
go for a walk	make a study plan	يضع خطة للدراسة
in danger of	get together	يجمع
find it difficult to	cope with = keep up with	يتعامل مع / يواجه
make notes	have an impact on	لها تأثير على
make decisions	for so long	لمدة طويلة
take action	in order of priority	وفق الأولوية
a bit stressed	pay attention to	يُنتبه لـ
sound like	that was your best	كان هذا أفضل ما لديك
make change	not get any worse	أن تصبح أكثر

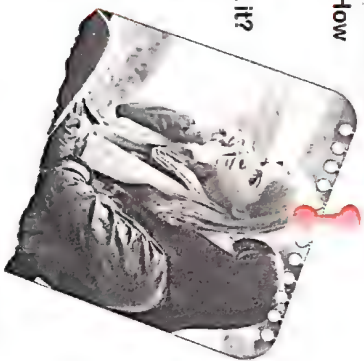
### 5 Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
trust	trust	trustworthy
exhaust	exhaustion	exhausted
experience	experience	experienced
influence	influence	influential
imagine	imagination	imaginative
choose	choice	
stress	stress	stressed
		stressful

### Definitions

run out	إهلاك / ارتقاق شديد	▶ a situation where you can't do anything as you are tired and stressed
clear off	يُصرف / يفتش	▶ to leave a place quickly
cope with	يتعامل مع	▶ to deal with difficult situations or problems
exhausted	مرفق	▶ describing the feeling of being very tired
down	تخبطهم / يفسد	▶ to make an angry, unhappy or confused expression, moving your eyebrows
improve	يحسن	▶ to make something better or to get better
mental health	الصحة العقلية	▶ how a person thinks and the emotions they feel
put	يضع / يضع	▶ to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy
promote	يرفع	▶ to help something develop
scold	يذم	▶ to angrily criticise someone, especially a child, about something they've done
self-care	العناية بالذات	▶ taking care of your body and how you feel
stress	توتر	▶ continuous feelings of being very worried and scared about your life
suppose	يقتضي	▶ used to say something is true, although you are uncertain about it
time management	إدارة الوقت	▶ organizing when you do things and for how long
well-being	سعادة / صحة / رفاه	▶ a contented state of being happy, healthy and prosperous

### Listening



Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit **stressed**.

Oh no! **Why don't you** sit down and tell me about it?

Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can **revise** because I have a big project for science, too. I also **promised** my **parents** I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

That sounds like a lot. Have you **considered** telling your parents you are stressed?

I don't want to worry them.

You could write down everything you have to do this week in order of priority and say 'no' to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, how about doing your revision while you are in the shop. It's usually quiet in the evenings, isn't it?

Have you **thought** about becoming a student counsellor? You're very good at giving advice!

Oh, thank you.



## What is the message of the poem?

suppose  
Phoebe Cary

- By **suppose** you're dressed for walking. And the rain comes pouring down, Will it  
1- **clear off** any sooner Because you **scold** and **frown**?  
2- And wouldn't it be nicer For you to smile than **pout**. And so make sunshine in the  
house When there is none without?  
3- And **suppose** the world don't please you. Nor the way some people do, Do you  
think the whole creation Will be **altered** just for you?  
4- And isn't it, my boy or girl, The wisest, bravest plan, Whatever comes, or doesn't  
come, To do the best you can?

Read the advice from a teacher who helps  
teenagers who are suffering from burnout

When I talk to teenagers who are  
suffering from burnout, I start by talking  
to them about the negative effects of  
their mental health problems. It's a good  
idea to ask how they're feeling, for  
example, they may feel exhausted or  
they may not have any time for self-care.  
Then I ask them about their routine  
because I want to find out how much  
time they spend doing their homework  
and how much time they spend on other  
activities. After that, we can find out if  
there's anything we can change, for  
example to have better time  
management. A final important thing to  
look at is what activities the student  
really enjoys. We can talk about these  
and think about how the student can  
make more time for them.



### Read a short extract from George Mitchell's book

One way to help you deal with life's problems is to focus only on the things you can change. There are many external factors which may influence how well you can cope with a particular problem. However, you should accept that there are some things you just do not have control over. It is not helpful to worry about these things. For example, when it rains do you get stressed about getting wet? Or do you buy a good raincoat to keep you warm and dry in bad weather? This is an example of how you can find a quick and simple solution to what others might see as a problem. This is also the first step to accepting change as something normal. It is a simple way to make sure you remain positive when you face life's difficulties.



## 7 Notice the Difference

responsibility	مسئولية	responsible	مسئول
promote	ترويج	get promoted (a promotion)	حصل على ترقية
poet	شاعر	poem	قصيدة
regular	منتظم	regularly	بشكل منتظم
athletes	رياضيين	athletics	الرياضة
choose	يختار	choice	الخيار
other	آخر (جاء)	another	آخر (مفرد)
alone	بفرد	lonely	شعر بالوحدة
improve	يحسن	prove / proof	يثبت / دليل
influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر / ذو نفوذ
find (found)	يجد	found (founded)	يؤسس

1 He was very ..... in shaping the public opinion.

2 He had a / an ..... in shaping the public opinion.

3 I don't believe that. What ..... do you have that shows this is true?

4 Practice is the best way to ..... your French.

5 He is an efficient employee, he deserves to get .....

6 He is an efficient employee, he deserves to get a .....

7 They opened a shelter to ..... temporary housing for the city's homeless.

8 Both parents are equally ..... for raising the children.

9 I take personal ..... for what has happened.

10 I've been writing short stories and ..... for years.

11 These river banks have inspired ..... for many centuries.

12 The company holds ..... meetings with employees.

13 We meet ..... to discuss our daily problems.

14 It was discovered that three of our Olympic ..... had taken drugs.

15 There are several different options you can .....

1 **influential**

2 **inflationary**

3 **improve**

4 **import**

5 **coated**

6 **coated**

7 **provide**

8 **provide**

9 **irresponsible**

10 **irresponsible**

11 **artists**

12 **verses**

13 **regular**

14 **regular**

15 **choice**

She faced the stark ..... of backing the new plan or losing her job.

He stayed there for a week all ..... and then went back to the centre.

He took on many workers. ....

His own company, he took on many workers. ....

Yoga is a very effective technique for combating stress.

I feel less stressed since I've been working

She's very good at coping in stressful situations.

Always eat when I feel .....

Exercise is the best way to get rid of .....

Moving to a new house is a very ..... experience.

Janet's been under a lot of ..... since her mother's illness.

She's been feeling very ..... since she started her new job.

Don't get confused

Synonyms & Antonyms

Worried and anxious are .....

Innovation and creation are .....

In their little boat they planned to voyage to distant lands. Distant is the synonym of .....

The accident left him with permanent brain damage. The antonym of "permanent" is .....

He's constantly changing his mind. The synonym of "constantly" is .....

She got some books out of the library and immersed herself in history and culture.

Immerse here means .....

It will be very inconvenient for me to have no car. The word 'inconvenient' here can be replaced by .....

I hope I have ..... the right decision to improve my life style.

Don't get confused

Prepositions, Expressions & Idioms



Stress is strongly **connected** to long work hours. **disconnect**  
 I decided to concentrate all my efforts **finding** somewhere to live. **for**  
 is the synonym of "influence". (choose two) **Affect** **Effect**  
 Will the prison system **effectively** the increasing numbers of prisoners? (choose two) **Effect** **Effect**  
 My family **popular** with an established company 50 years ago. (choose two) **cope with** **cope with**  
 I found **set up** to answer the questions. **a quite long time** **quite a long time**  
 It took **a quiet long time** **quiet a long time** to take part in school activities.  
 Teachers should **suppose** their students to take part in school activities. **discourage** **discourage**  
 Each exercise **on a different grammar point**. **focuses** **focuses**  
 My dad recommends that Sally **lives** exercises to lose weight. **not doing** **not doing**  
 Are you capable of **decisions on your own?** **causing** **making**  
 Every time I **a suggestion at work**, my boss overrides it. **get** **get**  
 We're going to talk to a 15 **years** old boy called Ali. **years** **years**  
 We used to **together and discuss our problems**. **set** **set**  
 Don't spend too much time **computer games**. **to play** **to play**  
 I **play** **played**

## Exercises on Vocabulary

- 46 Have you **spending the weekend in the country?** **agreed** **agreed**  
 47 I want to catch **with my classmates, I need to study a lot this weekend.** **in** **in**  
 48 Mental exhaustion and loss of energy are symptoms of **burnout** **burnout**  
 49 **turnout** **strikeout** **cutout** **burnout**  
 50 Self-care **is how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.** **Mental health** **Mental health**  
 51 It's about allowing kids to express feelings and **through art.** **emotions** **emotions**  
 52 **melons** **mentions** **emotions** **emotions**  
 53 **Frown** **Stress** **Supposed** **Supposed**  
 54 You are **to pass a driving test before you get a licence.** **supposing** **supposing**  
 55 **seemed** **exercise can protect you against heart disease.** **Physic** **Physic**  
 56 Mental **His mood suddenly** **and he seemed a little annoyed.** **scolded** **scolded**  
 57 **altered** **flew** **scolded** **scolded**

- passengers were asked to **their own suitcases before they were put on the plane.** **pour** **pour**  
 include answering the phone and dealing with customer enquiries. **responsibilities** **responsibilities**  
 They say that laughing is good for your mental **health** **health**  
 seeing her grandchildren gave her a sense of **well-being** **well-being**  
 We have found there is much more **and sickness among those who don't get help.** **well-being** **well-being**  
 What's the most **aspect of your job?** **stressed** **stressed**  
 stress **is not useful to divide schoolchildren into separate** **stations** **stations**  
 categories **are designed to** **and tone your leg muscles.** **drive** **drive**  
 The exercises are designed to **stretch** **break** **break**  
 She feared she wouldn't be able to **with two new babies.** **copy** **copy**  
 The doctor suggested that I might like to see a **to help me deal with stress better.** **chemist** **chemist**  
 lawyer **is to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy.** **pour** **pour**  
 cope **at me, annoyed, and drew her red pen firmly across the page.** **smiled** **smiled**  
 The teacher **includes nutrition, rest and physical appearance. strategies.** **paying attention to** **paying attention to**  
 self-dependence **includes nutrition, rest and physical appearance. strategies.** **paying attention to** **paying attention to**  
 Students are understandably **about getting work after graduation.** **anxious** **anxious**  
 I was under **from my parents to become a teacher.** **pressure** **pressure**  
 The study **beyond doubt the effectiveness of the new drug.** **scolded** **scolded**  
 The children ran round and round the playground until they were **exhausted** **exhausted**  
 We should allow kids to express their feelings and **through art.** **emotions** **emotions**  
 chemicals **is limiting his success.** **managerial** **managerial**  
 He's intelligent, but poor time **to withstand air pressure.** **resilience** **resilience**  
 The plant fiber has incredible strength and **and anxiety to my family.** **factor** **factor**  
 The incident has caused enormous **for our bad behaviour.** **pleased** **pleased**  
 Our parents were strict and we were frequently **down her face by the end of the race.** **scolding** **scolding**  
 The sweat was **as soon as he heard the police siren.** **cleared up** **cleared up**  
 He **cleared out** **declared** **declared**



- 148
1. The workers were left to deal with thousands of depressed and ..... passengers.  
 a frustrated b frustration c mental d pleased
2. The company's products have been ..... mainly through advertising in newspapers.  
 a scolded b promoted c suffered d promised
3. Unemployment in the first half of the year was 2.5 percent lower than in the same ..... the year before.  
 a space b period c stress d area
4. I don't ..... for a minute that he'll agree. I'm sure that he won't.  
 a realise b alter c recognise d suppose
5. We have developed a new ..... for detecting errors in the educational process.  
 a technician b technique c technical d excerpt
6. The following ..... from a March 2018 article clearly illustrates his bias.  
 a excerpt b except c poem d tabloid
7. Hormones are ..... that are released in the body and control many important functions.  
 a emotions b liquids c chemicals d vitamin
8. The most ..... thing in a fire is to make sure everyone is out of the building.  
 a exhausted b urgent c tabloid d vain
9. ..... side effects of the drug can occur and include drowsiness and headaches.  
 a Exhausted b Stressed c Positive d Negative
10. There was a lot of ..... on exam results at my school.  
 a focus b concentrate c help d worry
11. A fire ..... went off and the building had to be evacuated.  
 a alarm b phone c alter d stretch
12. The college now has a ..... to help students with both personal and work problems.  
 a veterinary b butcher c counsellor d burnout
13. Banks normally give ..... to large businesses when deciding on loans.  
 a excerpts b minority c emotions d priority
14. After having my car repaired, it seems to work ..... now.  
 a proper b probably c perfection d perfectly
15. It was good to see her finally reaping the ..... of all her hard work.  
 a benefits b disadvantages c frown d cons
16. ..... my surprise when I opened the door to find him standing there.  
 a Break b Imagine c Scold d Suffer
17. If you ..... something up, you create or arrange it.  
 a cope b seat c sit d set
18. There has been an immediate ..... against the government's proposed tax increases.  
 a reaction b deduction c excerpt d happy
19. For each topic covered, create a mind .....  
 a tabloid b book c map d broadsheet
20. They're sisters? I knew their surname was the same, but I never made the .....  
 a management b connection c responsibility d frown
21. She writes a / an ..... column for a national newspaper.  
 a probability b gradual c priority d regular
22. Most news magazines have a ..... devoted to external affairs.  
 a section b headlines c deadline d well-being
23. We are trying to get the baby into a ..... for feeding and sleeping.  
 a custom b tradition c stress d routine
24. Don't make any decisions before you've ..... the situation.  
 a scolded b considered c stretched d released

- 149
25. ..... is a chemical naturally released in the brain to reduce pain, that in large amounts can make you feel relaxed or full of energy.  
 a Priority b Penicillin c Endorphin d Exhaustion
26. They make decisions about various matters of .....  
 a importance b important c importantly d boring
27. Many parents find it hard to relate to their children when they are .....  
 a from b emotions c teenagers d factors
28. I had a pretty unpleasant ..... at the dentist's.  
 a experiment b expert c exports d experience
29. He hung a ..... on the door of the shop that said it would reopen at 11.  
 a solution b sign c sigh d sin
30. The ..... about whether he is innocent or guilty rests with the court.  
 a decision b statue c solution d chemical
31. This cream is for ..... use only. It must not be put inside the body.  
 a worried b worrying c internal d external
32. My grandmother had a strong ..... on my early childhood.  
 a influential b influence c affect d efficient
33. He wouldn't take just any book. He had to have this ..... one!  
 a relaxed b public c worried d particular
34. The hotel's owners were facing financial .....  
 a difficulties b poems c export d problem
35. You can post your relationship status on your Facebook .....  
 a profit b picture c profile d alarm
36. His son is being trained to take ..... of the family business.  
 a control b responsible c cause d suppose
37. When did you first get interested in ..... , and why did you specialize in long jump?  
 a cooking b medicine c athletics d social media
38. It's impossible to carry on a ..... with all this noise going on!  
 a conversation b stress c exhaustion d burnout
39. I sent him a ..... reminding him about the meeting.  
 a memory b memorial c tax d memo
40. More than 85,000 ..... of the magazine sold within three weeks.  
 a excerpts b copies c counsellors d solutions
41. The police are still trying to establish the ..... of the fire.  
 a reason b robbery c cause d coast
42. I tried taking tablets for the headache but they didn't have any .....  
 a effect b affect c efficient d surprise
43. I could feel them ..... me with their eyes.  
 a flying b feeding c following d controlling
44. I was merely questioning ..... we have the money to fund such a project.  
 a weather b whether c worried d without
45. Looking ..... and confident, the president answered questions from the press.  
 a happiness b sadness c relaxing d relaxed
46. Farmers are urged to reduce their use of ..... and work with nature to combat pests.  
 a chemist's b chemist c chemistry d chemicals
47. Air ..... is usually high in good weather and low in bad weather.  
 a measure b pressure c leisure d treasure



## Making suggestions

عمل  
الاقتراحاتالاقتراح  
Suggestion

How about... (V + ing) ...?

What about... (V + ing) ...?

I suggest ... (V + ing) ...

Have you considered + ing?

Have you thought about + ing?

Let's ... (Inf.) ...

Why don't we (Inf.) ...?

You could + ... Inf.

You should + ... Inf.

We shall + ... Inf.

## Agreeing and disagreeing

الموافقة  
Agreeing

That's a good idea.

That sounds fine.

That's what I think.

Fine by me.

الرفض  
disagreeing

Sorry, I'm not very keen.

Sorry, I'm busy.

I'm not sure about that.

I'm not very interested.

## Study these examples carefully

- You suggest having dinner at a restaurant.  
Let's have dinner at a restaurant.
- Your friend suggested going to the cinema. You disagree.  
Sorry, I'm busy.
- You suggest a solution to the problem of traffic in Cairo.  
How about setting up new roads and bridges?
- Seif suggested playing chess but you aren't interested. State another thing.  
I'm not very interested. I'd prefer to go for a walk.

I wish I had + P.P

I regret + V + ing

I should have + P.P

الحالة الثالثة If

I wish I had studied hard last year.

I regret not studying hard last year.

I should have studied hard last year.

If I had studied hard last year, I'd have passed.

should have + P.P. or

could have + P.P.

should have

shouldn't have

+ P.P.

ought to have

ought not to have

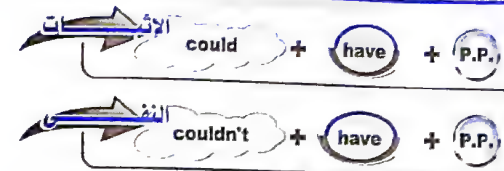
+ P.P.

- You shouldn't have wasted your time.
- You lost your bag. You ought to have been more careful.

## Uses

الاستخدامات

- She should have put her phone down. للحديث عن الندم في الماضي
- Should you have called your grandparents yesterday? لتوجيه اللوم
- He failed in his exam. He should have studied hard. لعمل توقع
- They should have arrived by now. عند قول إن شيئاً ما في الماضي لم يكن فكرة جيدة
- She shouldn't have got upset.



## Uses

الاستخدامات

- تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان الفاعل يستطيع القيام به في الماضي لكنه لم يفعل.
- She could have called and spoken to Mona.
- What could she have said to her friend?
- I could have come to the party but I wasn't interested. عند قول أن شيئاً ما لم يكن ممكناً في الماضي
- She couldn't have been at the supermarket at 8.00, because she was in the café. تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج كان محتمل الحدوث في الماضي
- I couldn't find my wallet. I could have forgotten it at home. تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي
- He failed in all his exams. He couldn't have been a clever student.
- تستخدم للتعبير عن تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه في الماضي لكنه لم يحدث.
- He studied quite well. He could have passed.



لاحظ الفرق بين: **should have** (+) p.p. **could have** (+) p.p.

تستخدم (should have + p.p.) لتوجيه اللوم.  
 You **should have come** early. You wasted a lot of time on your way.  
 Have you ever said something to a friend that you **shouldn't have said**?  
 What **should** you **have said**?  
 تستخدم (could have + p.p.) للتعبير عن إمكانية لم تتحقق في الماضي.

You **could have come** early but you didn't.  
**Could** you **have worked** harder last week?  
 What **could** you **have done**?  
 لاحظ الفرق بين:

تستخدم (should + inf. = ought to + inf.) في النصيحة و لتقديم اقتراحات وعمل توصيات.  
**should** (+) inf. **could** (+) inf.

Children **shouldn't** take candy from strangers.  
 What **should** I wear?  
 You really **ought to** quit smoking.  
 She **shouldn't** waste her time during final exams.  
 تستخدم (could + inf. = (was-were) able to = managed to = succeeded in) للتعبير عن المقدرة في الماضي:

I **could** sing but I **couldn't** swim.  
 I **managed to** pass all my exams but I **wasn't able to** join the college I wanted.

## Exercises on Structure

- Have you \_\_\_\_\_ spending the weekend in the country?  
 a considered b thought c deeded d agreed
- When you are worried about things; it is best to concentrate on the things you \_\_\_\_\_ control.  
 a would b might c can d have
- You \_\_\_\_\_ your father yesterday, the problem was too serious for you to solve alone.  
 a should consult b should have consulted  
 c didn't have to consult d shouldn't have consulted
- You could \_\_\_\_\_ asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed!  
 a has b having c had d have
- You look exhausted! I think you should consider \_\_\_\_\_ to bed earlier.  
 a to go b of going c going d go
- Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ a diary to help you plan your work?  
 a using b to use c to using d use
- You couldn't have \_\_\_\_\_ any more than you did. That was your best.  
 a do b done c doing d did
- I should have obeyed my mother. This sentence expresses \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a suggestion b good idea c regret d possibility
- You should have done your homework yesterday. This expresses \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a blame b wish c advice d deduction
- He failed in all his exams. He \_\_\_\_\_ a clever student.  
 a couldn't have been b can have been  
 c shouldn't have been d been

He failed in his exam. He \_\_\_\_\_ hard.

- a **shouldn't have studied** b should have studied  
 c **mustn't have studied** d must have studied
- Do you mind if we meet up after school? This expresses \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a suggestion b good idea c regret d possibility
- Have you thought about \_\_\_\_\_ more exercise?  
 a taking b take c to taking d to take
- What about \_\_\_\_\_ with the most important things first?  
 a start b starting c starts d started
- You look very tired. I think you should \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a have b to have c having d has
- You \_\_\_\_\_ have exceeded the speed limit. Now, you have to pay a fine.  
 a could b couldn't c shouldn't d should
- What \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday to avoid making that bad mistake? I feel sorry now!  
 a did I have to do b should I have done c should I do d I should have done
- He \_\_\_\_\_ studied the lesson well; he answered all the questions wrong.  
 a could have b must have c shouldn't have d couldn't have
- You could \_\_\_\_\_ together and help each other.  
 a study b studying c to study d studies
- Have you considered \_\_\_\_\_ to music before going to bed?  
 a to listen b listens c listening d listen
- You shouldn't have \_\_\_\_\_ TV so late last night!  
 a to watch b watching c watched d watches
- You should \_\_\_\_\_ to learn better time management skills.  
 a tried b trying c to try d try
- You could have \_\_\_\_\_ 'no' to playing on the school basketball team.  
 a saying b been saying c said d say
- All suggested \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at the restaurant close to my house.  
 a having b to have c to be having d have had
- I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you \_\_\_\_\_ me!  
 a could phone b should have phoned c should phone d would have phoned
- I \_\_\_\_\_ downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop.  
 a can't have b could have c shouldn't have d will have
- All \_\_\_\_\_ been unkind to his sister, Aya. He knew she would be upset.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
- Why \_\_\_\_\_ some snacks with you, so you aren't so hungry?  
 a you don't take b you don't taking c don't you take d don't you taking
- Have you considered \_\_\_\_\_ to your family about your feelings?  
 a about talking b to talk c talk d talking
- Have you thought \_\_\_\_\_ to your family about your feelings?  
 a about talking b to talk c talk d talking
- How \_\_\_\_\_ to some music to help you to relax?  
 a about listen b about listening c listen d listening
- I regret wasting my time. This means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a I should have wasted my time b I wish I had wasted my time  
 c I shouldn't waste my time d I wish I hadn't wasted my time
- How do you \_\_\_\_\_ to work in this heat without air conditioning?  
 a manage b succeed c able d capable



- GIANTS
- 154
1. You shouldn't have made that mistake. I wish you ..... making that mistake.  
 a will avoid b avoided c have avoided d had avoided
2. You ..... shouted at your sister. It was the wrong thing to do.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
3. You ..... the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.  
 a should catch b could have caught c shouldn't have caught d could catch
4. He ..... been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
5. There were drops of water in the streets. It ..... have rained last night.  
 a could b should c couldn't d mustn't
6. The boys ..... to have made so much noise in the library.  
 a ought b should c ought not d must not
7. You shouldn't ..... television for so long. Your eyes are so red!  
 a have watched b have watch c to have watched d watched
8. How ..... saying no more often?  
 a out b about c over d well
9. What ..... sport four times a week instead of six?  
 a about done b about do c out doing d about doing
10. Have you ..... to bed a bit earlier?  
 a considered going b consider going c considered to going d considered to go
11. Why don't you ..... studying for that exam in February?  
 a start b started c starting d starts
12. You ..... do your homework with other students.  
 a can't have b should have c could d could have
13. You ..... your revision. It is my advice.  
 a should plan b may plan c should have planned d might plan
14. Why ..... you come with us to the cinema?  
 a don't b didn't c weren't d aren't
15. You ..... taken more breaks.  
 a should b ought have c ought to d should have
16. If you give me some money, I ..... to go shopping.  
 a can b could c will be able d will can
17. Let's go to the club. "This sentence is a kind of a/an .....  
 a offer b request c suggestion d order
18. "Let's get something to eat," he said. - He suggested ..... something to eat.  
 a getting b to get c he would get d they must get
19. He said, "Let's sing." - He ..... singing.  
 a suggested b advised c warned d wondered
20. He said, "If I were you, I would study hard." - He ..... me to study hard.  
 a denied b advised c warned d accused
21. He said, "Why don't you watch a new film?" - He ..... watching a new film.  
 a denied b apologised c blamed d suggested
22. He said, "Let's go for a walk." - He suggested that we ..... for a walk.  
 a go b gone c going d goes
23. All the pupils understood the lesson yesterday, it ..... difficult.  
 a must be b can't have been c could be d can't be
24. He ..... been lazy. She neglected all her lessons so her teacher punished her.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have

- GIANTS
- 155
1. I am broken. I ..... have been more careful about money.  
 a must b may c might d should
2. Rami ..... in the club last night: he was busy working in his office.  
 a shouldn't have been b could have been c couldn't have been d must have been
3. His health has got worse. He ..... to hospital last week, but he was careless.  
 a should have gone b had to go c shouldn't have gone d must have gone
4. You ..... safety rules to avoid the infection you got last month.  
 a should have followed b shouldn't have followed c didn't have to follow d had to follow
5. We ..... meat when we went to the market; it was possible, but we preferred to buy fish.  
 a shouldn't have bought b could have bought c couldn't have bought d needn't buy
6. She ..... met Ayman in the club yesterday because he was ill.  
 a should have b have c could have d couldn't have
7. I travelled by train. I ..... by car, but I felt tired.  
 a had to travel b could have traveled c might have traveled d have to travel
8. In the past, women ..... do certain jobs.  
 a can't b will c shall d couldn't
9. I missed the first lecture; I ..... up late last night.  
 a should have stayed b could have stayed c shouldn't have stayed d needn't stay
10. Hamid was working with me all day, so you ..... seen him at the park.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
11. Kamal ..... helped Ali, but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
12. Thank you. It's a fantastic gift, but you ..... spent so much money on me.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
13. When I was younger I ..... stay up all night and not get tired.  
 a could b can c was d managed
14. I ..... gone to bed earlier last night. I'm really tired today.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
15. I ..... practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it.  
 a could have b couldn't have c shouldn't have d should have
16. The car broke down again; it ..... repaired well yesterday.  
 a can't have be b can't have c mustn't have been d couldn't have been
17. I tried hard to repair my car, but I ..... , so I got a mechanic to check it.  
 a was able to b had to c can't d couldn't
18. You ..... put your coat on the floor. Now it's dirty!  
 a ought to b mightn't have c shouldn't have d mustn't have
19. A: Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt his head. B: He ..... been more careful.  
 a might have b ought not to have c must have d should have
20. A small cat had somehow ..... surviving the fire.  
 a managed to b succeeded in c was able d could
21. I am unable to take photos now. I wish I ..... my mobile phone at home.  
 a won't forget b hadn't forgotten c haven't forgotten d didn't forget
22. I regret breaking that mirror. I wish I .....  
 a hadn't been careful b had been careful c was careful d wasn't careless
23. I regret starting to smoke; I wish I ..... smoking.  
 a hadn't started b wouldn't start c didn't start d can't start





- 1 ..... go out tonight.  
a Let's b How about c Let us d Can  
نستخدم let's للإقتراح في حالة وجود مصدر و صيغة جملة و ليس سؤال.
- 2 I missed the train, I ..... up earlier.  
a shouldn't have got b should have got c shouldn't get d could get  
لنقل هنا should have لان الجملة تعبر عن ندم في الماضي حيث فاتته القطار.
- 3 Have you considered ..... your English?  
a improve b to improve c to improving d improving  
لاحظ استخدام ing بعد الاقتراح المنتهي ب consider.
- 4 They suggested that Ali ..... lunch with them.  
a had b having c have d has  
لاحظ اذا جاءت جملة بعد suggest فإن الفعل يأتي في المصدر او should متبوعة بالمصدر.
- 5 They suggested ..... lunch with them.  
a had b having c have d has  
بينما لو جاء الفعل بعد suggest مباشرة فإننا نستخدم ing.
- 6 You ..... that car when you had enough money.  
a shouldn't buy b should have to buy c ought to have bought d should buy  
لاحظ استخدام ought to have /should have ويأتي بعدهم تصريف ثالث للتعبير عن اللوم في الماضي.
- 7 You ..... this car when you have enough money.  
a shouldn't buy b should have to buy c ought to have bought d should buy  
بينما في حالة النصيحة في المضارع نستخدم ought to /should ويأتي بعدهم الفعل في المصدر.
- 8 You could go to Alex this summer. It is really nice, "could" here expresses .....  
a suggestion b regret c permission d request  
لاحظ ان could هنا تعبر عن الاقتراح.
- 9 I wish I ..... my money. I should have been more careful.  
a wouldn't waste b didn't waste c hadn't wasted d wasted  
لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام بعد wish وذلك للتعبير عن الندم في الماضي.
- 10 How about ..... a film together?  
a watch b we watch c to watch d watching  
لاحظ استخدام ing بعد How about / What about.
- 11 I regret ..... him my phone. I shouldn't have lent him my phone.  
a lending b that I lend c had lent d to lending  
لاحظ استخدام ing بعد regret عندما نعبر عن اللوم على شيء حدث بالفعل في الماضي.
- 12 Why don't you ..... a smartphone?  
a buying b to buy c buy d bought  
لنقل هنا فعل في المصدر بدون to بعد Why don't you للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

## Writing Vocabulary

e-mail	الرسالة الالكترونية	formal language	اللغة الرسمية	advice	نصيحة
sender (From)	المرسل	informal language	اللغة غير الرسمية	blame	لوم
receiver=recipient(To)	المستلم اليه	messaging language	لغة المراسلة	regret	ندم
subject (About)	الموضوع	slang	اللغة العامية	wishing	تمني
greeting / salutation	التحية	user name	اسم المستخدم	possibility	الاحتمال
closing	الخاتمة	domain name	اسم بعد @ / اسم النطاق	probability	الاحتمال
signature / sign-off	التوقيع	password	الرقم السري	suggestion	الاقتراح
header	الرأس			necessity	الضرورة
footer	التذييل			prohibition	المنع
wishing	التمني			abbreviation	اختصار

urgent	عاجل	growth	نمو / تطور / تكاثر	hardships	الصعاب
press	صحافة / يضغط	deterioration	تدهور	unity	وحدة
trust	ثقة / يثق	harmful to	ضار لـ	treat	يعالج / يعامل
contribute to	يساهم في	devote	يكرس	require	يتطلب
heritage	تراث	hard currency	العملة الصعبة	poverty	الفقر
sacrifice	يضحى به / تضحية	conference	مؤتمر	threaten	يهدد
reject	ينفذ / يشجب	support	يساند / تأييد	glories	امجاد
cope with	يساير / يواكب	suffer from	يعاني من	eliminate	يزيل / يتخلص من
monuments	آثار	lead to	يؤدي الى	advanced	متقدم
belonging	الانتماء	seek to	تسعي الى	create	يخلق / ينشأ

my heart was set on	من الآن فصاعدا	nasty	قذر / سي
from now on	مشتهة / يشتهه	scared	مرعوب
suspect	مطرقة / يطرق	skin	جلد
proof	دليل	worth	يستحق
upset	مستاء	effort	مجهود
property	ملكية	expectations	آمال / توقعات





**1 e-mail** بريد إلكتروني

Mail   Contacts   Calendar   Notepad

Send   Save as a Draft   Cancel

Insert addresses (separated by commas) [Remove Bcc](#)

To: Mohamed@mail.com

Cc: Karim@mail.com

Bcc:

Subject:

[Attach Files](#) Plain Text

Hi Mohamed,

I wanted to write because I've noticed that you don't seem to be your normal self at the moment. You used to have so much energy, but now you look exhausted a lot of the time at school. I think I can understand how you're feeling because I was suffering from a lot of stress last year too. I couldn't cope with all of the homework I had. Instead of doing the work, I used to just sit at my desk and worry about it for hours. I remember that I was exhausted all the time and my teachers weren't very happy with my schoolwork. Time management was something I didn't know anything about back then, but I asked my sister for help and she showed me how to plan my study time better.

Is there something that you're worrying about which is stopping you getting to sleep? Or maybe you're doing too many things at the moment. Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes, so don't worry about it. When you understand that, you can start to identify the reasons for your problems.


Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you make the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together to have a talk about what's going on if you want. Just let me know when.

**Talk soon,**  
Karim

Read each and match it with


The description of the situation   ←   the email he wrote

What advice can you give?

 I have moved house and school and it's had an impact on my well-being.


I have just started doing sport to calm down because recently I've been quite angry. We have just moved to a new city because of my dad's new job. I had to leave all my best friends, the athletics club I was in and all this happened during an important year at school. I want to study medicine, so I have to get good results in my exams. I often get angry about small things.

What advice can you give?

 I am very worried about passing all my exams and although I can't spend much time with friends. I still follow what they are doing on social media.

For the last few weeks, I've been feeling like I can't cope with everything in my life. My friends are getting great marks at school and after school they meet up. But I don't have time to join them. On social media they always upload photos and videos of themselves having fun in the park and around town. I don't know how they find the time to do all these things and study too.

What advice can you give?

 I think it's important to know what is happening in the world, whether it's good or bad.

I like to know what is happening in the world and I have set up my phone to send me news alerts. Recently though, there have been so many problems happening around the world and it's making me feel stressed. It's having a big impact on my well-being. I often feel quite anxious and don't want to leave the house.



يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص الذي أرسل الرسالة  
**From: Ahmed 2020@yahoo.com**  
 الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمى (user name)  
 الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمى (domain name)

يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص المرسل إليه الرسالة  
**To: Ibrahim 2021@yahoo.com**  
 الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمى (user name)  
 الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمى (domain name)

يكتب هنا موضوع الرسالة الإلكترونية  
**Subject (About): Good news**  
 لابد أن يصف اسم الموضوع بشكل جيد و واضح و مختصر  
 يشجع المستلم علي فتح الرسالة

تختلف التحيّة باختلاف نوع الليميل فهناك :

الليميل الرسمي : وهو ايميل يرسل الى جهة رسمية (عمل / دراسة / شكوى / ...)  
 الليميل الغير الرسمي : وهو ايميل يرسل الى جهة غير رسمية (صديق / اقارب / ...)

formal email	informal email
Dear ....., Dear Sir, Dear Madam,	Hi ....., Hello ....., Hey,

يحتوي موضوع البريد الإلكتروني على هدف الرسالة

formal email	informal email
لا تستخدم اختصارات لا تستخدم كلمات مختصرة لا تستخدم صيغة الأمر	يمكننا استخدام مقدمة للترحيب يمكننا استخدام الاختصارات والكلمات المختصرة وصيغة الأمر

تحتوي الخاتمة على شكر أو توديع للمرسل إليه

formal email	informal email
Yours sincerely, Yours faithfully, Best wishes,	Bye, See you later, See you soon,

يمكننا توقيع الرسائل الإلكترونية الغير رسمية باسم المرسل،  
 لكن رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية أو التجارية بها أقسام  
 توقيع تتضمن شركة المرسل ومنصبه و شعار الشركة.

الأجزاء الرئيسية  
 لرسالة البريد  
 الإلكتروني

Sender  
(From line)

Recipient  
(To line)

Subject Line

Salutation  
(Greeting)

Body

Closing

Signature

is a digital message.

1. An ..... is a digital message.  
 a) letter b) paragraph c) essay d) email
2. "From: Ahmed 2020@yahoo.com" This email account refers to .....  
 a) recipient b) receiver c) addressee d) sender
3. "To: Ali 2021@yahoo.com" This email account refers to .....  
 a) recipient b) transmitter c) address line d) sender
4. "About: good news" This field refers to .....  
 a) subject b) receiver c) addressee d) sender
5. "To: Ali 2021@yahoo" Ali 2021 is called .....  
 a) title b) domain name c) nick name d) user name
6. In an Informal email, you CAN'T conclude it with .....  
 a) Bye b) Yours sincerely c) See you later d) See you soon
7. In an e-mail, the ..... line is where you type what the e-mail is about.  
 a) to b) subject c) attachment d) from
8. One can close an informal email with ".....".  
 a) Bye b) Yours sincerely c) Yours faithfully d) Best wishes
9. In an informal email, you can conclude with .....  
 a) Bye b) See you later c) Yours sincerely d) a & b
10. Messaging language doesn't require ..... rules of writing.  
 a) formal b) informal c) former d) comfortable
11. In a formal email, you can conclude with .....  
 a) See you soon b) See you later c) Yours sincerely d) Bye
12. A header is part of an email that contains the address of the .....  
 a) article b) sender c) recipient d) b & c
13. When writing a formal email, which of the following greetings wouldn't be acceptable?  
 a) To whom it may concern b) Dear Sir  
 c) Hi d) Dear Madame
14. What goes into the "To" line?  
 a) The name of the person that you are sending the Email to  
 b) The Email address of the person that you are writing to.  
 c) Your name. d) Your Email address.
15. If you close your email with "Yours sincerely", you must have opened it with .....  
 a) Dear Mr., b) Dear Mum, c) Dear Hazem, d) Hi
16. If you open your email with "Dear Sir/Madam, you should close it by using .....  
 a) Take care b) Bye c) See you soon d) Respectfully
17. In the "Subject" line of an email, we write .....  
 a) who will receive the email b) why we send the email  
 c) who will read the email d) who will send the email
18. In informal emails, it's NOT necessary to .....  
 a) write your signature b) write the recipient's email address  
 c) use correct grammar and punctuation d) close your email
19. If you want to congratulate a close friend on his birthday online, you send a/an .....  
 a) formal essay b) informal email  
 c) formal email d) informal paragraph



- 1 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a You should buy this car. It is a waste of money.  
 b You shouldn't to buy this car. It is a waste of money.  
 c You should have bought this car. It is a waste of money.  
 d You shouldn't have bought this car. It is a waste of money.
- 2 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I wish I had had the chance to meet him tomorrow.  
 b I wish I had had the chance to meet him yesterday.  
 c I wish I have had the chance to meet him tomorrow.  
 d I wish I could have the chance to meet him yesterday.
- 3 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a Let us meet up tomorrow at 7.  
 b Let's meeting up tomorrow at 7.  
 c Let's meet up tomorrow at 7.  
 d Let's meeting up tomorrow at 7.
- 4 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a She suggested me to buy this book.  
 b She suggested that I bought this book.  
 c She suggested me to buying this book.  
 d She suggested that I should buy this book.
- 5 We should go to the cinema tonight, "should" here expresses.....  
 a suggestion b advice c regret d permission
- 6 You should study hard, "should" here expresses.....  
 a suggestion b advice c regret d permission
- 7 Ali should have called her yesterday. This expresses.....  
 a advice b suggestion c blame d recommendation
- 8 Have you considered having lunch out tonight? "consider" can be replaced by.....  
 a understand b realise c think of d recognise
- 9 I could have travelled by car, but I travelled by train. This shows.....  
 a suggestion b regret c ability in the past d possibility in the past
- 10 I should have studied hard last year. This expresses.....  
 a advice b suggestion c blame d regret
- 11 Samira said, "Why don't we travel to Alexandria by train?" This means.....  
 a Samira insisted on travelling to Alexandria by train.  
 b Samira suggested travelling to Alexandria by train.  
 c Samira asked why we hadn't travelled to Alexandria by train.  
 d Samira asked why hadn't we travelled to Alexandria by train.
- 12 Which of the following sentences shows regret?  
 a I shouldn't have wasted my time watching too much TV.  
 b I should have wasted my time watching too much TV.  
 c I should waste my time watching too much TV.  
 d I had to waste my time watching too much TV.
- 13 Which of the following sentences shows suggestion?  
 a You shouldn't spend the weekend with us.  
 b You should have spent the weekend with us.  
 c Why didn't you spend the weekend with us?  
 d Why don't you spend the weekend with us?

Development of industry and agriculture is our only hope for increasing the national income and raising the standard of living for all members of the society.

- a تنمية الصناعة والثقافة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.  
 b تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.  
 c تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.  
 d تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

Civilized societies make great efforts to overcome the problem of illiteracy to push the wheel of development, progress and stability.

- a المجتمعات المتحضرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة الأمية لدفع عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.  
 b المجتمعات المتحضرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة التعليم لدفع عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.  
 c المجتمعات المتحضرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة الأمية لسحب عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.  
 d المجتمعات المتحضرة تبذل جهودا كبيرة للتغلب على مشكلة الأمية لدفع عجلة التنمية والتقدم والاستقرار.

You should define your goal yourself, and not be distracted by anything else. Also, don't waste your effort in useless things.

- a عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك ، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا ، لا تضع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.  
 b عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك ، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا ، لا تضع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.  
 c عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك ، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا ، لا تسرف مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.  
 d عليك أن تحدد هدفك بنفسك ، ولا تشتت انتباهك بأي شيء آخر. أيضا ، لا تضع مجهودك في أشياء عديمة الفائدة.

Water will become one of our most serious problems. Demand for water will increase greatly in the coming years.

- a أصبح الماء من أخطر مشاكلنا. سيزداد الطلب على المياه بشكل كبير في السنوات القادمة.  
 b سيصبح الماء من أخطر مشاكلنا. سيزداد الأمر على المياه بشكل كبير في السنوات القادمة.  
 c سيصبح الماء من أخطر مشاكلنا. سيزداد الطلب على المياه بشكل كبير في السنوات القادمة.  
 d أصبح الماء من أخطر مشاكلنا. سيزداد الطلب على المياه بشكل كبير في السنوات الماضية.

Social networking sites are among the most remarkable achievements of the modern technology, but they have some serious drawbacks that must be avoided.

- a تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة. حيث لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.  
 b تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة. لكن لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يمكن تجنبها.  
 c تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة. لكن لها بعض السلبيات الجادة التي يجب تجنبها.  
 d تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي من أبرز إنجازات التقنية الحديثة. لكن لها بعض السلبيات الخطيرة التي يجب تجنبها.

Smoking is a bad habit that destroys health, so smoking is not allowed in public places, where smokers cause harm to themselves and others.

- a التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة حيث يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالأخرين.  
 b التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالأخرين.  
 c التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن العامة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم فقط.  
 d التدخين عادة سيئة تدمر الصحة فلا يسمح بالتدخين في الأماكن الخاصة حيث يتسبب المدخنون في الإضرار بأنفسهم وبالأخرين.



عندما تعطى شخصاً تعليماً جيداً، فأنت تساعد أيضاً على التفكير والإبداع ليكون مواطناً صالحاً.

- When you give a person a well education, you also help him to think and create to be a good citizen.
- When you give a person a good education, you also help him thinking and create to be a good citizen.
- When you give a person a good education, you also help him to think and create to be a good citizen.
- When you give a person a good education, you also help him to think and create for be a good citizen.
- When you give a person a good education, you also help him to think and create to be a good citizen.

عندما تعطي وعداً لشخص فلا يجب أن تخلفه ولا تخاف أن تقول الحقيقة.

- When you do a promise to someone, you should not break it, and do not be afraid to tell the truth.
- When you make a promise to someone, you should not break it, and do not be afraid to tell the truth.
- When you make a promise to someone, you should not break it, and do not be frighten to tell the truth.
- When you make a promise to someone, you should break it, and do not be afraid to tell the truth.

تحتاج كل الكائنات وخاصة الإنسان إلى التعاون فيما بينها لتحقيق ما تريد والوصول إلى الأمان والاستقرار.

- All creatures needs to cooperate with each other to achieve what they want and to reach safety and stability.
- All creatures need to cooperate with each another to achieve what they want and to reach safe and stability.
- All creatures need to cooperate with each other to achieve what they want and to reach safety and stability.
- All creatures need to cooperate with each other to achieve what they want and to reach to safe and stability.

قد تجعل التكنولوجيا الشباب أقل نشاطاً من الناحية البدنية. وقد يتسبب الضوء الذي يأتي من الأجهزة الرقمية في مشاكل صحية.

- Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause health problems.
- Technology may make young people physical less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause health problems.
- Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that come from digital devices may cause health problems.
- Technology may make young people physically less active. The light that comes from digital devices may cause healthy problems.

عندما يتمتع الناس بالحرية، يمكنهم تحقيق التقدم في جميع المجالات. ومع ذلك، فإن الحرية ليست مطلقة.

- When people have free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.
- When people are free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolutely.
- When people are free, they can do progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.
- When people are free, they can achieve progress in all fields. However, freedom is not absolute.

## Exercises on Story

The new computer system has already proved its .....

- Millions were spent on ..... in a courtroom showdown between the two companies.
- She took a / an ..... and knocked a hole in the wall.
- The position of the body led the police to ..... murder.
- Don't buy that coat-it looks cheap and .....
- The hotel is not responsible for any loss or damage to guests' personal .....
- I have a suspicion that he's guilty, though I don't have any definite .....
- The car has been the company's most visible success story, with sales far exceeding .....

- He's jogging around the park every morning in a / an ..... to get fit.
- That's your lot! You ..... more money.
- She was ..... that he had left without saying goodbye.
- Many victims were too ..... to face him.
- In public he supported the official policy, but ..... he was sure it would fail.
- From now ..... recipients will get their fellowships on time.
- She's got her heart ..... on ballet lessons.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

For two months, I have been trying to decide who makes the ice cream. I have narrowed down<sup>(1)</sup> to my four favorite manufactures<sup>(2)</sup> Randolph farms, Goodies, DISCO and Twinkle.

Randolph farms make very good ice cream with all natural ingredients<sup>(3)</sup>. They have lots of different flavors<sup>(4)</sup>. I always get coffee flavor. They make the best coffee ice cream in the world. I've never had hot coffee but people say their coffee ice cream tastes just like the real thing.

Goodies make excellent ice cream. Like Randolph farms. Goodies use all natural ingredients. They only make three different flavors, strawberry<sup>(5)</sup>, vanilla and chocolate. The strawberry is amazing. The vanilla is wonderful. It is smooth<sup>(6)</sup> and has a refreshing<sup>(7)</sup>, creamy taste. The chocolate is smooth<sup>(8)</sup>. It is made with real cocoa beans from Bolivia. So, I decided to go on a map. After hunting a while, I discovered that it is on South America, a long way to go to get cocoa, so it must be good, I would

- (١) يقلل / يضيق  
(٢) صانع  
(٣) مقادير  
(٤) نكهة  
(٥) فواكه  
(٦) ناعم  
(٧) منعش  
(٨) رائع / مذهل  
(٩) عيوب  
(١٠) في الواقع  
(١١) قطع  
(١٢) ليان  
(١٣) ينضج



say that the only drawback<sup>(9)</sup> to Goodies ice cream is that they only make three different flavors.  
Disco ice cream is okay. They don't have many good flavors. Actually<sup>(10)</sup>, the only Disco flavor I like is Bubblegum. It is vanilla ice cream with little chunks<sup>(11)</sup> of bubblegum<sup>(12)</sup> in it. After you eat the ice cream, you can blow<sup>(13)</sup> bubbles<sup>(14)</sup> with the gum. That's pretty fun.  
Twinkle ice cream is mediocre<sup>(15)</sup>. The only good thing about Twinkle is that it is relatively<sup>(16)</sup> inexpensive. You can buy a whole carton of twinkle ice cream for LE 50. That's only two weeks allowance<sup>(17)</sup> for me.

- A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**
- If the author wanted to get a scoop of coffee ice cream, where would he or she probably go? To.....  
 a Goodies b Disco c Twinkle d Randolph farms
  - If you were concerned about Goodies, which of the following would make you prefer them?  
 a costs b flavors c long distances d good services
  - If a big number of customers care for the price? Which manufacture will increase the profit?  
 a Twinkle b Disco c Goodies d Randolph
  - The author writes. "That's a long way to get cocoa, so it must be good." Using this information, we can understand that the author believes that.....  
 a Bolivia makes the best cocoa in the world  
 b Goodies loses money sales of chocolate ice cream  
 c things that are hard to get must be of high quality  
 d Cocoa from the United States is not very good
  - According to the passage, if Goodies make more flavors, they will sell..... ice cream.  
 a less b more c little d no
  - According to the passage, how is Randolph Farms ice cream different from Goodies?  
 a Randolph Farms has many different flavors but Goodies doesn't  
 b Randolph Farms uses all natural ingredients hut Goodies doesn't  
 c Randolph Farms is very expensive but Goodies doesn't  
 d Goodies brings cocoa from the United States
  - Which of the following would be the suitable title for the passage?  
 a Strawberry, vanilla, chocolate and bubblegum too!  
 b The four top ice cream manufacturers in the world  
 c The finest ice cream in the world  
 d Picking the best ice cream manufacturer
  - According to the passage, what is the only drawback of Goodies ice cream?  
 a cheap ingredients b expensive price  
 c mediocre quality d lack of flavors

أحرص على اقتناء أقوى كتب  
المراجعات للثانوية العامة

**Openbook**  
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you want me to ..... it easier for you?  
 a make b do c try d take
- I was trying to say that I was a mistaken.  
 a All b Everything c Nothing d Something
- Mike: You know he failed all his examinations? Jane: .....  
 a I must believe it b I might believe it c I don't believe it d I ought to believe it
- She's always late. .... ?  
 a Is it b isn't she c Isn't it d was she
- I like pencils ..... than pens.  
 a best b the best c better d more good
- My mother is the one ..... sings on TV every morning.  
 a whom b which c whose d who
- No one had a clue what had happened neither the police ..... the public.  
 a nor b either c or d never
- We've now ..... the stage where it's time to make our minds up.  
 a acquired b found c reached d got
- There are some ..... stories that most people enjoy.  
 a adventurous b adventure c adventurer d advent
- Children below ..... intelligence need much attention.  
 a many b highly c massive d average
- You could organise ..... activities for children in their school holidays.  
 a sports b sporty c sporting d spot
- It's not real news, it is .....  
 a factual b sectional c fake d imagination
- I've been ..... at Cairo university.  
 a expected b agreed c accepted d excepted
- He isn't punctual as he always ..... appointments with me.  
 a break b brakes c bakes d breaks
- He had to carry ..... working until late last night.  
 a out b away c down d on
- At the end of the ..... day, people should relax.  
 a work b working c work's d works'
- He said, "I couldn't ..... more".  
 a accept b refuse c accord d agree
- How long ..... was he appointed as a diplomat?  
 a ago b since c for d when
- Don't let ..... be taken in easily.  
 a you b yourself c yours d your
- It is a ..... short poem.  
 a quiet b quit c quite d quietly
- Some items price has ..... so much.  
 a raised b arisen c risen d aroused
- I don't think he is a ..... partner for her.  
 a suit b suiting c suitable d suitability



Finish the following dialogue:

Leila met a new student "Randa" in school.

Leila: Hi, I'm Leila.  
Randa: I'm Randa.  
Leila: I haven't seen you around. Are you a new student?  
Randa: Yes, I'm a little nervous.  
Leila: What class are you in?  
Randa: I've also opted for the same.  
Leila: I've taken Physics, Chemistry and Mathematics.  
Randa: Good! After talking to you I'm feeling a lot better.  
Leila: subjects, so we'll be together.  
Randa: No, I don't know any students here.  
Leila: Come, I'll introduce you to the rest of the class.  
Randa: ...?

### 2 Translate into Arabic:

- The current economic crisis can be solved by hard work, increasing production and combating corruption.
- It's important to plan for the future, but you need to think flexibly when your plans change.
- It is believed that lifelong learning gives people more active minds and more confidence to face the future.

### 3 Translate into English:

- الطلاب والعمل يؤديان إلى النجاح بينما الجهل يؤدي إلى الفشل والفوضى.
- يؤمن هذا العصر بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة التي تسهل تبادل المعلومات والأخبار ويمكن الإنسان من اكتشاف أسرار الكون.
- يؤمن عينا غرس القيم الدينية والوطنية في قلوب شبيبا الرباعدهم عن اللخراف.

Write a paragraph of (120 words) about "How to take care of yourself":

### Enrich your language

risks	أزمة	honesty	الإخلاص	implant	غرس
confidence	ثقة	mess	الفوضى	religious	ديني
exhibly	مطربة	duty	واجب	values	قيم
neglecting	مطربة	neglect	الإهمال	moral	أخلاقي
universe	الفضاء	universe	الكون	deviation	الانحراف

### Main Vocabulary

Text messages between a student and an IT Support worker  
A letter of application for a job. An email asking for clarification about study tips  
A podcast about the future of work  
Speaking A discussion about new ways of studying  
Language Verb patterns with the gerund and infinitive; Phrasal Verbs

### Objectives



Part 1  
Reading & listen

decline	تقلص / يتناقص / يرفض	shocked	صدم / يدهش
welfare officer	موظف الرعاية	link	رابط / يربط
discussion	مناقشة / حوار	tools	أدوات
delay	تأخير / يؤخر	patterns	أنماط / نماذج
share	يشارك / يضيف / يحمي	realise	يرتك / يدرك
clarification	توضيح	solution	حل
respond	يستجيب / المجابة	recent	حديث
document	وثيقة / مستند	highlight	يبرز / يوضح
local	محلي	continue	يستمر
separate	يفصل	consequences	نتائج / نتائج
headphones	سماعات	contact	اتصال / يتصل بـ
podcast	بث إذاعي	session	جلسة / دورة
job application	طلب وظيفة	risk	خطر / مخاطرة
icon	أيقونة	level	مستوى
personal	شخصي	slides	شرائح
option	اختيار	suit	مناسبة / ملابس / بليز
interviewee	شخص يجري معه مقابلة	role	دور
home worker	عامل من المنزل	check	يتحقق / يتحقق
attach	يرتبط / يرفق	apps	تطبيقات
arrow	سهم	explanation	شرح
possibilities	إمكانيات	creative	مبدع
colleague	زميل	presentation	مقدمة
human beings	البشر	details	تفاصيل
conference	مؤتمر	record	سجل / يسجل
IT support worker	عامل دعم تكنولوجيا المعلومات		



## Additional Vocabulary

grateful	متن	chat	فردشة / دردشة	express	صوت / يندرس
include	يشتمل	sound	صوت / يندرس	click	نقر
online	على الانترنت	correct	صحيح / يصحح	technology	تكنولوجيا
suggest	يقترح	essential	ضروري	space	مساحة / فضاء
race	سباق / يسابق	recently	مؤخرا / حديثا	guess	يظن
connection	اتصال	replace	يستبدل	coloured	مألون
working hours	ساعات العمل	skills	مهارات	wonder	يتعجب
prediction	تنبؤ	available	متاح	introduce	يقتدم
support	نصم / ينصم	settings	إعدادات	understand	يفهم
plus sign	علامة +	image	صورة	receive	يستقبل
in case	في حالة	background	خلفية	reply	يرد / رد
the latest	الأحدث	destroy	يهدم	definitely	بالتأكيد
apply	يطبق / يطبق / يقدم	appear	يظهر	advice	نصيحة
classmates	زملاء الدراسة	calm	هادئ	affect	يؤثر
topic	موضوع	excited	يشعر بالإنارة	type	نوع
helpful	مفيد / نافع	headings	عناوين	certain	متأكد / معين
points	نقاط	system	نظام	notes	ملاحظات
similar	متشابه	finally	أخيرا	quick	سريع
experiment	تجربة / يقوم بتجربة	camera	كاميرا	completely	تماما
opinion	رأي	differently	بشكل مختلف	opinion	رأي
explain	يشرح	simply	ببساطة	health	صحة
address	عنوان	PowerPoint	برنامج باوربوينت	mind	عقل
conclude	يختتم / يقدم	screen	شاشة	add	يضيف
summary	ملخص	wonderful	رائع	free time	وقت الفراغ

## Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym	Antonym
install	يثبت / يركب	fix - insert - put - set up	remove - uninstall
old-fashioned	موجودة قديمة	outdated - ancient	modern - fashionable
instant	سريع	urgent - immediate - quick	late - gradual - unimportant
welfare	سعادة	interest - health - well - being	ill-being - depression - suffering
creative	مبدع	innovative - imaginative	common - boring
delay	تأخير / يؤخر	pause - holdback - gap	speed - quickness
decline	يقل / انخفاض	descent - reduction	rise - increase
separate	يفصل	isolate - detach	join - bound

a call	في مكانة	click	يضغط على
the left	على اليسار	concentrate	يركز على
of	سبب	reduce	يقلل إلى / ينخفض إلى
instead	بدلا من	look	يفحص / يفكر في
with	يساعد في	learn	يتعلم عن
to	يتعامل مع	sure	متأكد من
to	يتفق مع	know	يعرف عن
to	يتحدث إلى	apply	يقدم لـ
to	حل لـ	thanks	شكرا لـ
to	يستجيب لـ	grateful	ممتن لـ
to	يستجيب لـ	look	يبحث عن
give up	يستسلم / يتقاع	in advance	مقدما
a change in	تغيير في	start by	يبدأ بـ

## Expressions & Idioms

staying in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع	the same amount of time	نفس مقدار الوقت
have a virtual meeting	يجري مقابلة افتراضية	as well as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع
video conference call	مكالمة فيديو جماعية	Am I right to..?	هل أنا محق أن...؟
work from home	يعمل من المنزل	Do you mind...?	هل تمانع أن...؟
have control over	لديه سيطرة على	All the best,	أتمنى الأفضل لك
in ten years' time	في خلال ١٠ سنوات	in different colours	بألوان مختلفة
on ... own	بمفرده	by accident	بدون قصد / بالصدفة
have a memory of	لديه ذكرى عن	get angry	يقضب
make a summary of	يقوم بعمل ملخص عن	cause a change in	يسبب في تغيير في
give a presentation	يلقي مقدمة عن	make notes	يؤخذ ملاحظات
feel free to	لا تردد في	catch up with	يلحق / يواصل
join the meeting	ينضم للاجتماع	turn the sound up	يعلي الصوت
share the screen	يشارك الشاشة	turn the sound down	يخفض الصوت
internet connection	وصلة انترنت	give an explanation	يشرح / يوضح
stay (keep) in touch	يبقى على اتصال	instant messaging	مراسلة فورية



6

## Definitions

install	يُثَبَّت / يركب	to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used
join	يُتَمَثَّل	to become a member of a meeting or an organisation
software	برامج	the sets of programs that tell a computer how to do a particular job
virtual	الافتراضي	made on the internet or on a computer, rather than in the real world
mute	يُكَبَّم الصوت / صامت	to make a sound of something quieter or softer
share	يُشَارِك	to give some of what you have to somebody else
IT support worker	عامل دعم تكنولوجيا المعلومات	technical help that a company gives to customers using the internet
interpersonal	له علاقة بين الأشخاص	connecting with relationships between people
trend	اتجاه / موضة	a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing
welfare officer	ضابط السعادة	a person who is in a position of authority in a large organisation
highlight	يُؤَضِّج	to make part of a text with a special coloured pen
look into	يُفَحِّص / يُلْقِي	to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc. in order to solve it
technique	تقنية / أسلوب	a particular way of doing something (in which you have to learn special skills)
catch up with	يُلَاقِي / يساير	to improve and reach the same standard as other people in your class, group
mind map	خريطة ذهنية	a diagram used to represent words, ideas, tasks or other items
artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي	the study of how to make computers do intelligent things that people can do, such as think and make decisions

## Listening

## Some predictions about the future of work

- Artificial intelligence will start taking control of more work in the future.
- Human beings will continue doing jobs that need interpersonal skills.
- People will need to do jobs that need to learn different languages.
- Artificial Intelligence will cause a change in the types of jobs available.
- There are a lot of positive consequences to using Artificial Intelligence.
- Artificial Intelligence, or 'AI' as we call it, promises to destroy jobs.
- This study appeared to show a decline in jobs due to Artificial intelligence.
- Jobs that need to use interpersonal skills are a lot safer.
- Should we risk using AI if it is going to cause so many problems?
- You have to continue learning new things. I would consider studying English to a very high level.

## Reading

## Conversation between a student called Carla and an IT support worker at her school.

Hi, can you help us?

Yes, sure. Can you tell me what the problem is?

Sure. We wanted to have a virtual meeting with a group of students in Egypt for a project. We installed the software for the meeting and that was fine. Everyone joined the meeting. We turned our microphones on and switched our cameras on. We could hear and see everyone without any problems for the first five minutes.

OK and what happened then?

Then, I shared my screen and everything stopped working.

So the other students couldn't hear or see you and you couldn't see or hear them either?

That's right. We were talking to them, but they stopped responding. It was clear that they couldn't hear us. We turned our sound up, but it seems that they still couldn't hear anything we said or see us. We can only see the document I wanted to show them now.

Did you mute your microphone?

No, I didn't touch my microphone. It was still on.

Did you check your internet connection?

Yes, I did. The internet connection is fine.

That's strange. Are you definitely still in the meeting? Could it be that you left the meeting and you didn't realise it?

I'll check. Oh, you're right. I closed the meeting by accident! Sorry.

Don't worry. It happens. Maybe you can look into other ways of staying in touch with the students during your meetings if there are technical problems, like email or instant messaging.

Yeah, good idea. Thanks for your help. I'll go and email the students.

## IT Support Forum

Nevine I've bought some new headphones and have plugged them in but now I can't mute my microphone and everyone can hear me all the time.

Hana

I'm having problems with a video conference call I can't hear anything when people are talking to me. I have just downloaded and installed the latest version of the software but nothing is happening. I have tried switching off the computer and turning it on again. Any other ideas?

Mazin

I need to show someone what is on my computer when we're on a call, but I don't know how to share my screen.

Ziad

There is a long delay when I'm playing games online and I can never keep up with my friends. I always lose the races in the games. Do I need to look into getting a better internet connection?

Malak

When I join a meeting online I can't turn on my camera. So people can hear me, but they can't see me?





**TIP 1** Make a study plan before you start studying.

Start by thinking what you need to learn. For example, if you need to study for a Maths exam make a list of all the topics you need to know. Then, decide how much time you'll need to learn about each one. Finally, decide which topics are the most important and plan to spend more time on these.

**TIP 2** Draw mind maps.

This is a creative way of bringing information about a topic together in one place. You start by writing the topic in the centre of the page and then draw lines from the centre. At the end of each line, you write a different part of the topic and make short notes about it. You could even use pictures instead of text in your mind map too.

**TIP 3** Create a study system with colours.

For example, if you write the most important points about a topic on cards, you could use the same colour cards for similar topics. This will help you to find information more quickly. You could also get some different coloured pens and highlight different types of words (verbs, nouns, adjectives... etc.) in different colours.

Read this letter for a job application

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing this letter to apply for the position of student welfare officer. I believe that I am suited to the role because I enjoy helping people feel more positive at school. I have learnt to deal with stressful situations I like to use my weekends and evenings to help other students. I always appear to be calm which helps the person I am speaking to. I am very excited by this role and I hope you decide to offer me the position. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully,  
Mariam

Studying on my Head by Hamid Shazly

I was never very good at concentrating, so my dad gave me a book called Study Skills for you. I discovered lots of new ideas. The first message in the book is that we all learn differently. So, the first thing I did was to learn how I best remember things.

I tried making a summary of each unit of the schoolbook, then a summary of the summary until I reduced the essential information into a small mind map. Highlighting important details in different colours helped me so much that I was even able to remember where on the map certain information was.

History was my worst subject. So, while I was making my notes, I played the same song in the background. When I went to sleep, I used to listen to the song again to make me think about the history notes. To avoid too much sitting on my desk, I got up every 20 minutes and walked around my room or went and studied in the park. I also recorded my notes on my phone and listened to them while walking in the park.

So, I guess you're wondering whether all these experiments worked. Well, it certainly helped me discover how I remember things best and it made revising a lot more interesting. This meant I spent more time doing it. When I got my final results, I was shocked but very happy to tell my dad that the highest mark I got was in history.

Notice the Difference

reason for	سبب / مبرر
role	دور
suit	يلابس / يناسب / بدلة
realise	يدرك / يفهم
create	يبدع / يخلق
find (found)	يجد
experience	خبرة / تجربة حياتية
wonder	يتساءل
synonym	مرادف
include (including)	يشمل / يتضمن (مشملة على)

cause of

rule

suitable

recognise

creative

found (founded)

experiment

wander

antonym (opposite)

contain

سبب ل

يحكم

مناسب / ملائم

يتعرف على (شكل...)

مبدع / إبداعي

يؤسس

تجربة علمية

يتجول

الكلمة المضادة / تضاد

يحتوي على

- The museum's collection ..... works of art from all around the world.  
 a consists      b excludes      c contain      d includes  
 I know the name of all the people in our street, ..... little children.  
 a include      b including      c includes      d included  
 The price of the goods ..... transport.  
 a contains      b consist of      c enclose      d includes  
 I vaguely ..... his voice, but couldn't think of his name.  
 a recognized      b identified      c realised      d released  
 I didn't ..... we had to write each answer on a new sheet of paper.  
 a realise      b recognise      c release      d identify  
 Could you pick up my ..... from the cleaner's for me, please?  
 a suitable      b suit      c suitability      d suiting  
 There's no doubt that Jana is ..... for the job. She is very efficient.  
 a suitable      b suit      c suitability      d suiting  
 There's no doubt that this job ..... Jana.  
 a suitable      b suits      c suitability      d suiting  
 The government plans to ..... more jobs for young people.  
 a create      b creation      c creative      d creatively  
 They use ..... ways to market their services to customers.  
 a create      b creation      c creative      d creatively  
 He was able to ..... the game with his superior strength and skill.  
 a role      b root      c ruler      d rule  
 He ..... why I didn't visit him yesterday.  
 a promised      b told      c wandered      d wondered

Don't get confused

Prepositions, Expressions & Idioms

- Will the prison system ..... the increasing numbers of prisoners?  
 a popular with      b catch with      c catches up with      d cope up with  
 My brother likes to ..... in school activities.  
 a take place      b take part      c join      d fill



- notes and took photos.
- 11 We just observed wild animals, .....  
 a turned b talked c made d did
- 12 He is a detective who works ..... crimes.  
 a on b at c for d with
- 13 You've just ..... yourself to be a liar.  
 a proved b improved c provided d proof
- 14 They helped their mother ..... the flat.  
 a to tidy b to tidying c tidying d with tidy
- 15 Have you ..... contact with any of your friends from college?  
 a loss b lose c lost d missed
- 16 A true friend is hard to find! Do not ..... touch with your good friends.  
 a keep b get c lose d miss

### contact, communicate & connect

contact (v)	يتصل (تليفونيا)
contact with (n)	اتصال (تليفونيا)
communicate with	يتواصل مع
connect with	يتصل بـ
connect to	يوصل / يربط (شيء بـ شيء)

- I will **contact** you later.
- She refuses to have any **contact with** her friend.
- I **communicate** with my friends on the internet.
- Can you connect me **with / to** a number in Paris?
- Can I **connect** my printer to your computer?

- 17 We have good ..... with the local community.  
 a communicates b contacts c connects d contact
- 18 She is unable to ..... her ideas to other people.  
 a communicate b contact c connect d contract
- 19 I finally made ..... with her in Paris.  
 a communicate b contact c connect d contract
- 20 There were buses that ..... the two villages not only to each other but also with the city.  
 a communicated b contacted c connected d contact
- 21 I sometimes ..... my friends by phone and email.  
 a commute b connect c communicate d contact

### employ

employ
employee
employer
employable
employed

- يوظف The company wants to **employ** workers.
- موظف The company needs new **employees**.
- صاحب عمل Workers have to respect their **employers**.
- قابل للتوظيف To remain **employable** you should improve your skills.
- لديه وظيفة Do you pay less tax if you're self-**employed**?

- 22 The firm needs an ..... to work as an accountant.  
 a employ b employer c employee d employment
- 23 To remain ....., you need to improve your skills and gain new ones.  
 a employ b employable c employer d employment
- 24 The company in my town closed last week leaving 40 people .....  
 a employ b employable c employer d employment
- 25 A good boss always listens to his .....  
 a employees b employers c employments d employable
- 26 I think the new skills in this course will make you more .....  
 a employable b employment c unemployed d employer

Don't get confused

### Synonyms & Antonyms

- This type of account offers you instant access to your money. Instant is the synonym of.  
 a urgent b slow c late d distant
- Profits have declined as a result of the recent drop in sales. The antonym of "decline" is.  
 a limit b limit c decrease d increase
- Install and remove are .....  
 a synonyms b antonym c the same meaning d adjectives
- How did you make the connection? "connection" means .....  
 a appreciate b removal c link d invisible
- ..... is the synonym of "old-fashioned".  
 a fashionable b current c Out of date d Fashion
- The adjective "sociable" can be the opposite of the adjective .....  
 a outgoing b friendly c unfriendly d social
- The verb "separate" is a antonym to the verb .....  
 a divide b attract c attack d attach

### Collocations

a survey	يقوم بأعمال الحسابات
the same	يقوم بنفس الشيء
exercise	يقوم بعمل تدريبات
a sport	يمارس رياضة
well in the test	يبنى بشكل جيد في الاختبار
work	يقوم بعمل
home	يذهب للمنزل
running	يمارس الجري
wrong	يفسد / يتعطل
/ take notes	يدون ملاحظات
a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
me worried	يجعلني قلق

get	يحصل على عمل منتظم
the balance	يحصل على التوازن
a call	تصله مكالمة
turns	يتناوب الأدوار
a break	يأخذ قسط من الراحة
on a project	يقوم بمشروع
for help	يطلب المساعدة
for advice	يطلب النصيحة
for reason	يسأل عن مبرر
calm	يشعر بالهدوء
ill	يشعر بالمرض
better	يكون على نحو أفضل

- 27 Our marriage began to ..... wrong after we had our first child.  
 a go b do c make d take
- 28 Top footballers ..... regular appearances on TV.  
 a get b do c make d take
- 29 It can be difficult to ..... the right work-life balance.  
 a get b do c make d take
- 30 Freelance workers have to ..... their own accounts.  
 a do b get c make d take
- 31 I suggest that Ali ..... much exercise to keep fit.  
 a does b do c make d makes
- 32 It's a good idea to ..... some research before you buy a house.  
 a go b do c make d take
- 33 If you weren't a teacher, what job would you ..... ?  
 a work b cause c do d make
- 34 We were asked ..... a class survey today.  
 a make b to make c do d to do



## Exercises on Vocabulary

- Be careful you must ..... making such mistakes.  
 (a) enjoy (b) avoid (c) refuse (d) intend
- Can you ..... your screen so I can see what the problem is, please?  
 (a) share (b) mute (c) install (d) join
- I'll went to catch ..... with my classmates, I need to study a lot this weekend.  
 (a) on (b) up (c) into (d) in
- The students found the test difficult and it led to a ..... in their motivation.  
 (a) produce (b) raise (c) progress (d) decline
- I am going to have a new washing machine .....  
 (a) made (b) installed (c) instilled (d) done
- You have to ..... your mobile phone before you enter the meeting.  
 (a) turn on (b) mute (c) destroy (d) disappear
- My father advises me to stop studying when I feel exhausted as my concentration .....  
 (a) increases (b) declines (c) improves (d) moves
- We ..... the TV up to drown the noise of our neighbours arguing.  
 (a) caught (b) turned (c) return (d) looked
- The company will soon release the latest ..... of its network operating system.  
 (a) version (b) virtual (c) virtue (d) clarification
- Someone who writes computer ..... is known as a programmer or developer.  
 (a) description (b) hardware (c) software (d) headphones
- If any ..... needs to take time off, he should contact the Personnel Department.  
 (a) employer (b) employee (c) employment (d) unemployed
- I ..... the TV sound to hear my father.  
 (a) caught (b) turned (c) went (d) muted
- People use more than words when they ..... with each other.  
 (a) communicate (b) connect (c) mute (d) install
- He gets paid a good wage, because he works for a fair .....  
 (a) employment (b) employee (c) employer (d) unemployment
- I'm afraid I don't have the ..... knowledge to fix your laptop.  
 (a) medical (b) agricultural (c) technical (d) technique
- The plumber is coming tomorrow to ..... the new washing machine.  
 (a) install (b) discover (c) invent (d) cover
- I ..... on a link and recent reviews of the production came up.  
 (a) clicked (b) took (c) turned (d) hold
- The lights ..... on automatically when it gets dark.  
 (a) watch (b) switch (c) click (d) tune
- Make sure you check the ..... of the policy before you sign it.  
 (a) details (b) detailed (c) planes (d) plants
- I read the papers to ..... up with what's happening in the outside world.  
 (a) caught (b) switch (c) install (d) keep
- As I wanted to travel to other countries, studying languages was the ..... choice.  
 (a) logical (b) illegal (c) logically (d) irrational

- At the moment our technology is more advanced, but other countries are ..... up with us.  
 (a) feeding (b) running (c) catching (d) cleaning
- Sometimes the only way I can contact my brother is through ..... messaging.  
 (a) install (b) instant (c) instance (d) instancy
- Due to the disadvantages of fossil fuel, we should ..... the possibilities of wind-generated electricity.  
 (a) look into (b) apply for (c) turn up (d) switch on
- I don't like that place - I'm ..... not going back there.  
 (a) definite (b) definitely (c) certain (d) probable
- The printer will begin to work as soon as you ..... it in.  
 (a) turn (b) blog (c) plug (d) switch
- ..... is the study or use of electronic processes for storing information and making it available.  
 (a) ID (b) HW (c) IT (d) DJ
- Despite all challenges, women are once again ..... the ranks of the police.  
 (a) joining (b) separating (c) enrolling (d) plugging
- Our colors are the same, although they are ..... combined on our flags.  
 (a) different (b) differently (c) difference (d) differentiate
- Some scientists want to have a ..... meeting with a group of students in Egypt for a project.  
 (a) virus (b) audience (c) virtual (d) valleys
- You can engage in a ..... call with up to five people and exchange instant messages or files.  
 (a) text (b) confront (c) podcast (d) conference
- I have my public life and my private life, and as far as possible I try to keep them .....  
 (a) separate (b) saved (c) caused (d) difference
- He's very ..... and thinks that women should not work outside home.  
 (a) fashion model (b) old-fashioned (c) fashionable (d) fashion designer
- Fashion ..... in general are strongly influenced by music, TV and film celebrities.  
 (a) treads (b) delays (c) trends (d) deletion
- The interviewer asked her to speak into the .....  
 (a) microscope (b) microphone (c) camera (d) screen
- The embassy will continue ..... with the Chinese government.  
 (a) talk (b) fight (c) discuss (d) discussion
- There were so many different ..... of bread that I didn't know which to buy.  
 (a) tape (b) types (c) typist (d) sort
- If anything needs ....., I'll be happy to explain further.  
 (a) transportation (b) reservation (c) clarification (d) destination
- There was a slight ..... in the departure of the plane.  
 (a) replay (b) early (c) late (d) delay
- The successful applicant will have excellent ..... skills.  
 (a) terrible (b) awful (c) personnel (d) interpersonal
- You need to complete the online ..... form to get the job.  
 (a) application (b) reservation (c) fashion (d) employer
- The closure of the factory is a / an ....., if business does not improve.  
 (a) possible (b) possibility (c) tournament (d) impossibility



- GIANTS
- It was thought that the disease could not be passed to .....  
 a human resources b plant beings c human rights d human beings
- Many magazines selected him as one of its 100 ..... and heroes of the century.  
 a icons b villains c volunteer d statues
- When Dina sent the email, did she ..... the photos?  
 a attack b attach c mute d catch
- Drugs can ..... the health and lives of young people.  
 a install b join c mute d destroy
- The journalist asked her ..... several embarrassing questions.  
 a view b interviewee c interview d vision
- Parents have ..... their concerns about their children's safety.  
 a install b muted c joined d expressed
- He said that the health, safety and ..... of students were always of concern.  
 a sickness b welfare c sadness d ill-being
- Before disobeying the rules, consider the .....  
 a consequences b consequent c concrete d convection
- Your ..... are to go to university or to get a job.  
 a choice b captions c chooses d options
- In this business, you must use new methods and be ..... to stay ahead.  
 a stupid b creative c furious d nervous
- People wonder if there is a ..... between illness and radioactive wave.  
 a link b contact c communicating d connecting
- If you can't fix it yourself, you need to call technical .....  
 a spoil b protest c suppose d support
- My husband is going to ..... the air conditioner he has bought.  
 a link b install c restore d reform
- The kids always get ..... on their birthday.  
 a exciting b excitedly c excited d excite
- We need to ..... our teachers in their efforts to raise standards.  
 a cheat b deceive c support d hinder
- I try to ..... to each comment I receive, no matter how much it might upset me.  
 a talk b support c postpone d respond
- Her work ..... have described her as the person who puts a smile on everyone's face.  
 a colleagues b collegos c employs d toddlers
- I was deeply ..... to learn of his death.  
 a shock b shocking c shocked d shocked
- Riding a bicycle without a helmet is a ..... I prefer to avoid.  
 a risk b rest c reek d disk
- According to official ....., five people were killed last year near that road junction.  
 a request b records c investigates d headphones
- Modern ..... makes moving money around much easier than it used to be.  
 a astrology b technology c biology d devises
- The ability to give clear ..... is the most important quality of the ideal teacher.  
 a statues b stations c explanations d stones

- GIANTS
- You can download these ..... to remind you of things you have to do.  
 a apps b trains c microphones d headphones
- A question-and-answer ..... will be held after the lecture to clear any vagueness.  
 a microphone b talk c session d speech
- Is that the ..... spelling?" "I don't know - look it up in a dictionary."  
 a disconnect b connect c correct d correctly
- I'm going to ask each of you to make a short ..... of his project.  
 a present b presentation c summarise d representation
- Everyone should, in my ....., have some understanding of science.  
 a opening b viewer c opinion d visual
- Of course I'm not annoyed with you; it's ..... that I don't have time to go out with you tonight.  
 a slum b sample c simple d simply
- People talk about male and female, but what is the ..... difference between the two?  
 a essential b inessential c vain d nonsense
- Students with a / an ..... in chemistry will probably find the course easier.  
 a data b foreground c backbone d background
- I feel ..... that this change will be for the best.  
 a certainly b curtain c certain d uncertainly
- Parking is readily ..... near the station entrance. You can't park there.  
 a availability b unbelievable c unavailable d available
- She didn't ..... surprised when I told her the news.  
 a seemed b looking c sound d voice
- Do you care to make any ..... about the election?  
 a repairs b sums c damages d predictions
- If workers accept an increase in ..... hours with the same pay, they would enjoy higher profits.  
 a worker b working c unworkable d works
- The factory ..... most of its workers with robots.  
 a delayed b threw c muled d replaced
- It is important for people to ..... their work life from their home life.  
 a separate b mix c join d include
- It is vital that food is made ..... to the famine areas.  
 a valuable b unavailable c available d value
- We were friends and ..... for more than 20 years.  
 a collocation b collections c colleagues d collegos
- We bought a new program for our computer and the ..... has been successful.  
 a meditation b installation c negotiation d investigation
- Teachers can't be ..... by computers in the classroom.  
 a revised b faced c replaced d placed



## Phrasal verbs

تعبيرات  
الأفعال

► Phrasal verbs consist of a verb combined with one or two prepositions. When these words are used together, they create a new verb with a different meaning.

تتكون أشباه الجمل الفعلية من فعل مدمج مع حرف جر واحد أو اثنين. عندما يتم استخدام هذه الكلمات معًا، فإنها تعطي فعلًا جديدًا بمعنى مختلف.

► In some phrasal verbs, the noun comes in between the verb and the preposition:  
في بعض أشباه الجمل الفعلية، يأتي الاسم بين الفعل وحرف الجر:

Turn your sound up.

► In some phrasal verbs, the noun comes after the phrasal verb:  
في بعض أشباه الجمل الفعلية، يأتي الاسم بعد الفعل:

We can look into other ways of staying in touch.

► Some phrasal verbs can either be separated or not separated by a noun:  
في بعض أشباه الجمل الفعلية يمكن فصلها أو عدم فصلها باسم:

Please, turn your camera off = Please, turn off your camera.

## Prepositions after verbs

حروف الجر  
بعد الأفعال

complain  
belong  
apply  
object  
intend  
apologise  
get

to

يشكو لشخص  
ينتمي  
يتقدم بطلب لشخص  
يعترض على  
ينوي  
يعتذر لشخص  
يصل إلى

hear  
protect  
suffer  
result  
prevent  
differ

from

يتلقى أخبارًا من  
يحمي من  
يعاني من  
ينتج من  
يمنع من  
يختلف عن

switch  
turn  
concentrate  
go  
depend - rely

on

يشغل  
يشغل  
يركز على  
يستمر  
يعتمد على

search  
apologise  
hope  
blame ..  
apply  
work

for

يجتهد عن  
يعتذر عن شيء  
يأمل في  
يلوم على  
يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة  
يعمل لذي

keep  
turn

up

يجاري  
يرفع (صوت)

consist  
die  
accuse

of

يتكون من  
يموت بسبب  
يتهم بـ

think  
dream  
hear

about / of

يفكر في  
يحلم بـ  
يسمع عن

find out  
wonder  
tell ...  
complain  
know  
talk  
read  
warn

about

يعرف عن  
يتساءل بشأن  
يخبر شخص عن  
يشكو من  
يعرف عن  
يتحدث عن  
يقرا عن  
يجذر من

result  
succeed  
believe  
plug  
take place  
take part

in

يؤدي إلى  
ينجح في  
يؤمن بـ  
يركب / يوصل  
يجد  
يشارك

deal

with

يتعامل مع

take

off

تقلع للطائرة / يخلع ملابس

laugh

at

يسخر من

catch

up with

يلحق / يساير

## Preposition tricks

help

help... + inf.

يساعد

► He helped me do my homework.

help... to + inf.

► He helped me to do my homework.

help... in + ing

يساعد في

► He helped me in doing my homework.

help... with + n

► He helped me with my homework.

trade

trade with

يتاجر مع

► We traded with China.

trade in

يتاجر في

► We traded in / deal in vegetables.

hear

hear of / about

يسمع عن

► Have you ever heard of this writer?

hear from

يتلقى أخبارًا من

► My friend traveled abroad and I haven't heard from him till now.

turn

turn on

يشغل

► Turn on the TV. I want to watch the news.

turn off

يفصل

► Always turn off devices after use.

turn down

يقلل / يخفض

► It is so cold, turn down the air-conditioning, but don't turn it off.

turn up

يرفع / يعلي

► It is so hot, turn up the air-conditioning.

turn down

يرفض

► I asked him to go with me but he turned down.

angry

angry with

يغضب من

► I am angry with my friend.

angry about

يغضب بشأن

► I am angry about what he has done.

find

found out

يكشف

► I found out that I was mistaken.

find out about

يعرف بشأن

► If you want to find out about this writer, search Google.

blame

blame... for

يلوم على

► He blamed me for coming late.

blame... on

يلقي باللوم على

► He blamed his bad result on his bad friend.



run

run out (بدون مفعول) / ينقذ  
run out of مفعول / ينتهي

One day oil will **run out**.  
We will **run out of** oil.

give

give out  
give off  
give up  
give away

يزرع

يطلق / ينفذ

يستسلم / يقنع عن

يتبرع

The food and drink are **given out** to the poor.  
The fire **gave off** a lot of heat.  
Never **give up**, whatever hardships you face.  
The children **gave away** their toys for a charity.

## Exercises on Structure

- 1 Turn the camera ..... I want to see you; I've missed you so much, Mum.  
a down b off c on d up
- 2 Let's look ..... new ways of working.  
a on b info c to d back
- 3 We are going to look ..... other ways of sharing documents online.  
a after b up c into d down
- 4 At least, I have this weekend to ..... with the school work I missed.  
a keep up b turn up c pick d catch up
- 5 I can't hear what's on clearly. Please, turn the sound .....  
a on b down c up d off
- 6 We told her the sound was too loud so she turned it .....  
a on b down c of d up
- 7 Ali is looking ..... a space to park his car.  
a for b up c forward d after
- 8 He helped ..... the reform of agriculture.  
a at b with c of d to
- 9 I don't want to go out yet. I'm waiting ..... the mail to arrive.  
a at b to c of d for
- 10 When I realized I was wrong, I apologised ..... him for my mistake.  
a to b with c at d for
- 11 How did she find ..... that she had won the prize?  
a about b out c from d of
- 12 The explorers were looking ..... diamonds.  
a up b after c for d up
- 13 Samira is very interested ..... medicine and wants to be a doctor.  
a of b in c on d up
- 14 His uncle died ..... cancer two years ago.  
a of b off c from d to
- 15 I can't go ..... to the fifth floor today. I'm exhausted.  
a down b through c up d at
- 16 Cutting ..... trees causes damage to the environment.  
a in b of c away d down
- 17 Some people believe ..... ghosts.  
a by b in c with d about
- 18 I felt quite excited as the plane took ..... from the airport.  
a up b on c off d at
- 19 I'd never heard ..... him at all until last week.  
a from b with c of d for

- ... is a difficult period ... forever.  
... I speak Italian, all the others in the class laugh ..... me.  
... 1918, millions of people all over the world died ..... Spanish flu.  
... was arrested trading ..... drugs.  
... Aya apply ..... that job in the company?  
... You should apologise to your teacher ..... forgetting your book.  
... That little black car belongs ..... my uncle.  
... She managed ..... work out the problem in no time.  
... Can you help me ..... find an answer to this problem?  
... Self stopped watching the match and turned ..... TV.  
... I have missed some lessons and I need to ..... up with my classmates.  
... We could run out ..... oil in the next twenty years.  
... I prefer tea ..... coffee.  
... Let's look ..... the internet to find out more information.  
... I'm looking for his phone number. I haven't heard ..... him for ages.  
... I really ..... to using mobiles while driving.  
... I felt quite excited as the plane took ..... from Heathrow.  
... I need to take some time ..... to see my mother.  
... The police are looking ..... the disappearance of two children.  
... Turn your cameras ..... so that you can see everyone.  
... Turn on is the synonym of ..... on.  
... All the prayers are kindly requested to turn their mobiles ..... in the mosque.  
... If you have problems, don't get stressed or give ..... it.  
... There is a vacant job in our company. Why don't you apply ..... it.
- a to b with c on d for  
a out b away c up d off  
a in b on c off d of  
a fetch b catch c reach d switch  
a on b into c to d up  
a up b off c off d on  
a place b off c on d up  
a object b refuse c disapprove d hate  
a of b for c at d from  
a for b in c on d from  
a than b to c against d over  
a of b from c with d in  
a reach up b catch up c use up d hold up  
a down b off c on d up  
a in b to c for d to  
a with b in c for d to  
a Can you help me ..... find an answer to this problem?  
a in b to c for d up  
a She managed ..... work out the problem in no time.  
a to b into c down d for  
a That little black car belongs ..... my uncle.  
a on b about c at d with  
a up b down c at d to  
a I speak Italian, all the others in the class laugh ..... me.  
a on b about c at d to  
a forever.  
a is a difficult period ... forever.  
a to b with c on d of



الافعال الاتية يأتي بعدها to + inf.

agree	يوافق	threaten	يهدد	need	يحتاج
arrange	يرتب	wish	يرغب	volunteer	يتطوع
decide	يقرر	refuse	يرفض	tend	يميل
expect	يتوقع	prove	يثبت / يبرهن	seem	يبدو
hope	يأمل	prepare	يستعد	hurry	يسرع
learn	يتعلم	choose	يختار	encourage	يشجع
offer	يعرض	pretend	يتظاهر	hesitate	يتردد
plan	يخطط	request	يطلب	seek	يسعى الي
promise	يعد	deserve	يستحق	fail	يفشل
want	يريد	appear	يظهر	manage	يتمكن

Toka hopes to be an engineer.

Jana promised to study hard.

Ing. مضاف له فعل

admit	يعترف	dislike	يكره	resist	يقاوم
avoid	يتجنب	understand	يفهم	resume	يستأنف
deny	ينكر	postpone	يؤجل	put off	يؤجل
enjoy	يستمتع	fancy	يتخيل	delay	يؤخر
finish	ينهي	imagine	يتخيل	endure	يتحمل
practise	يمارس	complete	يكمل	necessitate	يتطلب
suggest	يقترح	involve	يتضمن	can't help	لا يستطيع ان يمنع نفسه
spend	يقضي	include	يشمل	consider	يفكر في
appreciate	يقدر	risk	يخاطر	miss	يفتقد
		consider	يعتبر		

He admitted stealing the mobile.

I regret not travelling abroad.

Ing. بدون اختلاف في المعنى:

hate	يكره	like	يحب
love	يحب	prefer	يفضل

Ing. بدون اختلاف في المعنى:

I'd love to meet Mr Shaker.

I'd like to meet Mr Shaker.

I'd prefer to meet Mr Shaker.

I like to play (playing) tennis.

Ing. بدون اختلاف في المعنى:

continue	يستمر	start	يبدأ
----------	-------	-------	------

Employees will continue doing / to do this.

prefer	+	V-ing	+	to	+	V-ing
--------	---	-------	---	----	---	-------

I prefer using the internet to watching TV.

I'd prefer to use the internet rather than watch TV.

had better	ينبغي	would rather	يفضل
let	يسمح	make	يرغم

I'd rather meet Mr Ahmed.

I'd better meet Mr Ahmed.

I'd rather you met Mr Ahmed.

The teacher made Ali repeat the homework again.

stop	يتوقف	forget	ينسى
remember	يتذكر	regret	يأسف
try	يحاول / يجرب		

remember to + inf.

يتذكر ان يقوم بعمل شيء (لم يفعله)

He remembered to call his friend.

تذكر ان يتصل بصديقه.

remember + v + ing

يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر انه (فعله)

He remembered watching this film.

تذكر انه شاهد هذا الفيلم.

forget to + inf.

ينسى ان يفعل شيئا (لم يفعله)

Nadia forgot to close the gate.

يفعل شيئا ثم ينسى انه فعله

forget + v + ing

Nadia forgot reading the novel.

regret to + inf.

يشعر بالأسف لأن يقول أو يخبر شخص شيئا ما

I regret to say that my son is a loser.

يشعر بالندم على شيء حدث

regret + v + ing

He regretted watching this play. It was boring

try to + inf.

يحاول عمل شيء (وغالبا لا ينتج)

The student tried to escape, but the headmaster caught him.

(يقوم بعمل شيء ليري نتيجةه / يجرب عمل شيء)

try + v + ing

Try wearing this dress.

Try taking an aspirin.

stop to + inf.

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئا

He stopped to smoke

توقف لكي يدخن.

stop + v + ing

يتوقف عن عمل شيء

He stopped smoking.

توقف عن التدخين

Ing. باستخدام not

Thank you for not making noise.

I apologize for not coming early.



استخدام **ing** + **v** بعد **to** في التعبيرات الآتية:

take to	يعتاد علي	object to	يعترض
be used to	معتاد	be accustomed to	معتاد
get used to	يعتاد علي	due to	يسبب
get round to	يجد الوقت له	owing to	يسبب
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	contribute to	يسهم في
lead to	يؤدي إلى	be opposed to	معارض ل
in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	thanks to	بفضل

يستخدم فعل مضاف له **ing** بعد التعبيرات الآتية

be busy	مشغول	be worth	يستحق
have difficulty (in)	يجد صعوبة في	it's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
it's no good = it's no use	لا فائدة من	it's a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
there is no point in	لا فائدة من	feel like	يرغب / يريد
can't stand	لا يحتمل	how about - what about	ماذا عن
can't help	لا يستطيع منع نفسه من	don't mind	لا يمانع

- She **has difficulty** in walking.  
It's a **waste of** time surfing the internet.  
I **feel like** having a cold drink.

في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات التالية نستخدم **to + inf.**happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky /  
relieved / amazed....+ **to** + **inf.**

- It is **difficult for** her **to get** up early.  
It was **easy for** Jana **to study** English.

في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات و أدوات الاستفهام نستخدم **to + inf.**

how to

what to

where to

+ **inf.**

- I don't know **how to go** to the club.  
He is in a tight corner; he doesn't know **what to do**.

## Important Notes

لاحظ الفرق بين:

like / would like / feel like

- Seif **likes** to play (playing) football.      Seif'd **like** to play football.  
Seif **feels like** playing football.

أفعال يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم **to + inf.** في المعلوم وفي حالة المبني للمجهول تأتي **to + inf.** بعد

الفعل مباشرة	يأمر	يشجع	يطلب	يطلب
advise	يأمر	encourage	يطلب	يطلب
allow	يسمح	expect	يطلب	يطلب
ask	يطلب	promise	يطلب	يطلب
invite	يطلب	help	يطلب	يطلب
tell	يطلب	teach	يطلب	يطلب
choose	يطلب	challenge	يطلب	يطلب
require	يطلب	want	يطلب	يطلب
	يطلب	order	يطلب	يطلب
	يطلب	permit	يطلب	يطلب
	يطلب	persuade	يطلب	يطلب
	يطلب	force	يطلب	يطلب
	يطلب	command	يطلب	يطلب
	يطلب	beg	يطلب	يطلب
	يطلب	instruct	يطلب	يطلب

الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر بشكل عام:

hear	يسمع	notice	يلحظ
see	يرى	watch	يشاهد

- I **heard** Toka **sing** a song.  
I **heard** Toka **singing** a song.

= I heard the whole song.  
= I heard part of the song.

استخدام **to + inf.** بعد الكلمات:

the first ... / the second ... / the last / the next

- Ahmed was **the first to get** the high mark.  
Toka was **the last to attend** the meeting.

يستخدم المصدر بدون **to** بعد الأفعال الناقصة:can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't /  
shall / should / will / would

- They **must** attend the conference.

She **can run** very quickly.فعل **help** يأتي بعده المصدر مع **to** أو بدون **to**:

- Toka **helped** Jana **do** her homework.  
Toka **helped** Jana **to do** her homework.

الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها **ing** في حالة عدم وجود مفعول، ويأتي بعدها **to + inf.** في حالة وجود مفعول

advise	ينصح	forbid	يمنع	permit	يسمح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يوصي ب	encourage	يشجع

- I **advise** you **to read** this novel.

I **advise reading** this novel.

- I was **allowed going** out.

## Exercises on Structure

- Be careful you must ..... making such mistakes.  
a) enjoy      b) avoid      c) refuse      d) intend  
I hope ..... the biology exam; I'm so worried.  
a) will pass      b) pass      c) to pass      d) passing  
I remember ..... this man in the club a year ago.  
a) seeing      b) to see      c) had seen      d) to seeing  
Don't forget ..... off the computer when you've finished with it.  
a) switching      b) switch      c) to switch      d) to switching  
What do you plan ..... when you go to Sharm El-Sheikh?  
a) to do      b) to doing      c) will do      d) do  
You should ..... speaking English with native speakers to speak fluently.  
a) practise      b) avoid      c) decide      d) hope  
You look exhausted! I think you should consider ..... to bed earlier.  
a) to go      b) of going      c) going      d) go  
I don't think you should risk ..... out in this heat. It's far too hot right now.  
a) going      b) to go      c) go      d) to going  
Do your parents allow you ..... out later at weekends?  
a) stay      b) to stay      c) to staying      d) staying



- 100 I always try to avoid ..... with bad friends.  
 a mixing b to mix c mix d to mixing
- 101 You should stop ..... social media while you're studying.  
 a checked b check c checking d checks
- 102 When studying you should remember ..... a break every twenty-five minutes.  
 a to take b taking c to take d took
- 103 You need to ..... your mind and body healthy.  
 a be kept b keeping c keep d am keeping
- 104 You seem ..... on video calls every evening!  
 a be b to be c to being d being
- 105 You have to stop ..... email because it is old-fashioned.  
 a to use b using c used d uses
- 106 I hope ..... a new car instead of the old one.  
 a to buy b buying c to buying d will buy
- 107 My friend suggests ..... the midyear holiday in Luxor.  
 a will spend b to spend c spending d spend
- 108 We ..... mixing with bad friends because of their terrible behaviour.  
 a prefer b wouldn't like to c fail d avoid
- 109 Stop ..... noise; your father is asleep.  
 a to making b making c make d to make
- 110 I really regret ..... up late; I missed the first lecture.  
 a staying b to stay c to staying d for staying
- 111 My father promised ..... me a new mobile when I get high marks.  
 a buying b to buy c would buy d will buy
- 112 Would you like ..... the summer holiday with us in Port Said?  
 a to spending b spend c spending d to spend
- 113 Would you mind ..... me your camera?  
 a lend b lending c to lend d in lending
- 114 The old man threatened ..... our parents if we don't stop making noise.  
 a inform b to informing c to inform d would inform
- 115 I remember ..... this young man before when I was in Alexandria.  
 a meeting b to meet c to meeting d had met
- 116 Please, remember ..... your digital camera: we need it for our journey.  
 a bringing b bring c to bring d will bring
- 117 We ..... to spend the weekend in our friend's village.  
 a consider b enjoy c would rather d plan
- 118 I ..... to join the faculty of fine arts: it is the field of study I like most.  
 a disliked b decided c enjoyed d refused
- 119 I hope ..... an army officer when I grow up.  
 a to be b will be c being d would be
- 120 She regrets ..... her time before yesterday's exam; she failed to answer some questions.  
 a had wasted b to waste c will waste d wasting

- 121 The teacher suggested ..... to the library to borrow some poetry books.  
 a go b to go c to going d going
- 122 The police ..... the young man of stealing the money.  
 a excused b thanked c accused d rewarded
- 123 Basel offered ..... me with my homework.  
 a helped b helping c to help d help
- 124 I forgot ..... my calculator to school so I used my friend's calculator.  
 a bring b bringing c brought d to bring
- 125 Have you finished ..... your room yet?  
 a to clean b cleaning c clean d cleaned
- 126 We never allow ..... in this school.  
 a bully b bullying c to bully d is bullied
- 127 Rami promised ..... me to finish my school project.  
 a helps b help c helping d to help
- 128 Which book did you choose ..... at the library?  
 a to reading b reading c to read d read
- 129 My cousin has decided ..... Japanese.  
 a learn b to learning c learning d to learn
- 130 The children really enjoyed ..... those poems.  
 a reading b to read c read d to reading
- 131 I didn't finish ..... my homework until 10 o'clock last night.  
 a do b to doing c to do d doing
- 132 The teacher suggested ..... the information on the internet.  
 a to finding b to find c finding d find
- 133 When I went to the shops last night, I remembered ..... these shops before.  
 a to visiting b visiting c to visit d visit
- 134 When my father drove to work this morning, he stopped ..... the phone.  
 a to answer b answer c answering d to answering
- 135 I can't help ..... when I hear that.  
 a to laugh b to laughing c laughing d in laughing
- 136 My uncle stopped ..... football after he hurt his leg.  
 a play b playing c to play d to playing
- 137 Don't spend too much time ..... computer games.  
 a play b playing c played d to play
- 138 Mona was looking forward to ..... the title role in the new play.  
 a play b playing c be played d being played
- 139 She isn't used to ..... the beds.  
 a make b do c making d doing
- 140 I visited Luxor when I was three, but I don't remember ..... there.  
 a going b to go c went d to go
- 141 My grandmother promised ..... me some cakes when I next visit.  
 a to making b make c making d to make



- It took two days ..... to the centre.  
 a to getting b get c to get d getting
- I'm not used ..... on the left.  
 a to drive b driving c to driving d at driving
- Last week, I started ..... a new language.  
 a learn b to learning c learning d learned
- Last weekend, my friend offered ..... me.  
 a help b helping c to helping d to help
- Sorry, I think I forgot ..... my book.  
 a bringing b bring c brought d to bring
- Can you give him my CV? I'd really like ..... here.  
 a to work b work c working d to working
- I really regret ..... this old car; it has caused me a lot of trouble.  
 a to buying b buy c to buy d buying
- We ..... to spend the weekend in my village.  
 a admitted b suggested c decided d enjoyed
- Nesma decided ..... the film instead.  
 a watching b watch c to watch d to watching
- Robert Louis Stevenson began ..... when he was a child.  
 a write b to writing c written d writing
- I forgot ..... milk when I went to the shops.  
 a buying b buy c to buying d to buy
- Would you like ..... faculty of arts?  
 a joining b to join c to joining d joining
- Amir started ..... preparations for his brother's wedding party.  
 a to make b to making c make d made
- Dalia remembers ..... comics every week when she was young.  
 a buying b to buying c to buy d buy
- Dalia always remembers ..... a comic for her niece when she visits her sister.  
 a buying b to buying c to buy d buy
- Ahmed stopped ..... football on his way home.  
 a to play b play c to playing d playing
- Did you remember ..... my letter? - Oh, I completely forgot.  
 a posted b post c to post d posting
- Do you object ..... to Hurghada? Where else can we go?  
 a being taken b be taken c to be taken d to being taken
- Although my question was easy, he refused ..... it.  
 a answering b for answering c to answer d answer
- I really ..... to using mobiles while driving.  
 a object b refuse c disapprove d hate
- I still remember ..... Alexandria when I was young. It was really amazing.  
 a to visit b being visited c visit d visiting

- ..... wouldn't like .....  
 a to be b play c to play d to be
- ..... don't spend too much time ..... computer games.  
 a playing b played c playing d has been
- ..... don't forget ..... our books with you the next time you come.  
 a to bring b to bringing c bringing d to play
- ..... despite the difficulties, we hope ..... the African cup.  
 a winning b win c to winning d bring
- ..... He denied ..... the window glass.  
 a break b to break c breaking d to win
- ..... I'm not really interested in ..... to the university.  
 a go b to go c going d to breaking
- ..... I can't help ..... you about it.  
 a to tell b telling c to telling d being gone
- ..... The young man didn't stop ..... although I asked him twice.  
 a to smoking b smoked c smoking d being told
- ..... My sister hates ..... by air.  
 a fly b to fly c flies d to smoke
- ..... My teacher promised ..... me.  
 a visit b would visit c to visit d flew
- ..... The lazy student admitted ..... his homework at home.  
 a leaving b to leave c left d visiting
- ..... I always avoid ..... with bad people.  
 a to have treated b to treat c treating d leaves
- ..... We expect ..... the English test this year.  
 a pass b to passing c passing d treat
- ..... They suggested ..... for a picnic in the park.  
 a to go b goes c has gone d to pass
- ..... On my way to the station, I stopped ..... about Fatma.  
 a asking b ask c to ask d asked
- ..... He stopped ..... and put down his pen.  
 a write b to write c written d writing
- ..... Astronauts have to practise ..... everyday activities without gravity.  
 a to do b to be done c being done d doing
- ..... The salesman denied ..... money from the lady.  
 a taking b to take c takes d take
- ..... "Would you like to join us?" "No, thank you. I'd rather ..... here."  
 a stay b to stay c staying d stayed
- ..... I'll have a word with you when you finish ..... the report.  
 a write b to write c writing d written
- ..... We don't have any bread because Ali forgot ..... some from the baker's.  
 a buying b to buy c buy d to buying



- 194
1. The police \_\_\_\_\_ the car to stop before the thieves could drive away.  
 a forecast b forced c made d had
2. The teacher warned the students \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
 a no waste b not wasting c don't waste d not to waste
3. Ali is planning \_\_\_\_\_ all weekend revising for next week's maths test.  
 a to spend b spend c spending d to spending
4. My father advised me \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early because I had a test the next day.  
 a to go b going c go d went
5. Do you think one day people will stop \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers?  
 a reading b read c to read d to reading
6. I've \_\_\_\_\_ to build a new country house.  
 a allowed b encouraged c planned d suggested
7. Mother always asks me \_\_\_\_\_ on myself.  
 a to depending b depend c to depend d for depending
8. Would you like me \_\_\_\_\_ to the club with you?  
 a go b to go c going d gone
9. You can't deny \_\_\_\_\_ the window; all the boys said you did it carelessly.  
 a breaking b to break c break d to breaking
10. My friend allowed me \_\_\_\_\_ his mobile.  
 a to using b use c using d to use
11. I can't help \_\_\_\_\_ when I speak with my little grandchild.  
 a to laugh b laugh c to laughing d laughing
12. Tamer and I agreed \_\_\_\_\_ seven pounds each.  
 a paying b pay c to pay d was paying
13. The school arranged \_\_\_\_\_ a new charity this year.  
 a supported b supporter c to support d supporting
14. Ali prefers \_\_\_\_\_ to Dahab.  
 a is flying b to fly c to have flown d flew
15. When we go to the Chinese restaurant, I want \_\_\_\_\_ something different.  
 a have tried b to try c try d trying
16. What do you \_\_\_\_\_ to do in the summer?  
 a avoid b plan c finish d practise
17. We prefer watching TV to \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema.  
 a going b go c goes d went
18. Remember \_\_\_\_\_ out all the lights before you leave.  
 a put b to putting c to put d putting
19. Jana posted the letter and remembered \_\_\_\_\_ it later.  
 a posting b to post c to posting d posts
20. It would be marvellous to fly in a balloon. I'd love \_\_\_\_\_ in one someday.  
 a flying b flies c fly d to fly

- 195
21. \_\_\_\_\_ the TV. I want to watch the news.  
 a of b off c on d down
22. We are looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ Aswan.  
 a to go b to going c going d go
23. The teacher blamed me \_\_\_\_\_ forgetting my homework.  
 a for b on c of d to
24. What is the reason \_\_\_\_\_ being late?  
 a of b why c for d that
25. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ her before.  
 a to see b seeing c see d to seeing
26. Remember \_\_\_\_\_ some tea, we don't have any.  
 a buy b buying c to buying d to buy
27. Switch \_\_\_\_\_ your camera if you don't want to be seen during the meeting.  
 a on b off c down d of
28. He \_\_\_\_\_ drink some coffee.  
 a can't stand b prefers c would prefer to d avoids
29. Mum \_\_\_\_\_ me tidy my room before going out.  
 a forced b made c told d advised
30. Ali is \_\_\_\_\_ in watching horror movies.  
 a enthusiastic b keen c interested d fond
31. Many people died \_\_\_\_\_ COVID-19.  
 a out b from c with d of
32. We have to look \_\_\_\_\_ an alternative for oil before it runs \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a for / out b after / off c for / out of d up / in



## 1 Writing Vocabulary

punctuation	علامات الترقيم	semi-colon	فاصلة المنقوطة	transition words	كلمات الربط
full stop=period	النقطة	dash (hyphen)	شرطة	contrast	تناقض
exclamation mark	علامة التعجب	slash	شرطة مائلة	addition	المعطف والإضافة
question mark	علامة الاستفهام	focus	التركيز	cause (reason)	السبب
speech mark	علامات التنصيص	unity	الوحدة / الارتباط	comparison	المقارنة
apostrophe	الفاصلة العليا	brevery	الإيجاز	sequence	السلسلة الزمني
coma	الفاصلة	coherence	ترابط / تلاحم	result (effect)	النتيجة
colon	الأدوية / علامة :	conclusion	الختام	purpose	الغرض

## 2 Vocabulary for Translation

war	حرب	purpose	غرض	optimistic	متفائل
co-operate	يتعاون	morals	أخلاق	treaty	معاهدة
co-operation	التعاون	president	رئيس دولة	disagreements	خلافات
outstanding	بارز / مميز	nations	أمم	disputes	نزاعات / خلافات
resources	موارد	current events	الأحداث الجارية	consumption	الاستهلاك
inland / local	داخلي / محلي	transfer	ينقل	construction	بناء / تشييد
traffic jam	ازدحام المرور	solution to	حل لـ	conflict	صراع
global	عالمي	faithful	مخلص	enhance	يتفادى / يحسن / يعزز
efforts	جهود	deal with	يتعامل مع	well fare	سعادة
means	وسائل	protection	الوقاية / الحماية	put an end to	يضع حدا لـ
tips	نصائح	cost	يتكلف / تكلفة	characteristics	خصائص / سمات

## 3 Chapter three

revenge on	يقتله من	inheritance	ميراث	handsome	إسيم
adopt	يبنس	lodgings	مساكن	grumpy	تترو / نكد
dare	يجرؤ	share	يشارك / نصيب	jealous	غير
fiancé	خطيب	clerk	موظف / كاتب	proud	نفر / معتد بنفسه
get engaged	يتم خطبته	disappointed	محبط	ordinary	عادي

احرص على اقتناء أقوى كتب  
المراجعات للثالوية العامة

التحميل

Insert addresses (separated by commas) Remove Bcc

To: Monica@mail.com

From: Iman@mail.com

Cc:

Subject:

Attach Files

Plain Text

Hi Monica,

Thank you for your email about virtual meetings. I understand how to join the meeting by clicking on the link in an email and turning my microphone and camera on and off, but I'm not sure about how to give a presentation during a meeting.

It sounds like you have to share your screen if you want to show other people a document or PowerPoint slides, is that right? So I need to join the meeting, share my screen and then stop sharing when I've finished showing the thing I wanted to show. Have I understood that correctly? If I haven't, feel free to let me know how I should be doing it. Maybe we could have a quick call so you can talk me through it.

Thanks very much in advance for your help. I'm sure I'll be able to give presentations in our meetings without any problems very soon.

Talk to you soon,

Iman

Hi there,

You asked for some study tips and I have two good ones for you:

Try using the Promoted technique. You concentrate on your work for 25 minutes, then take a break, then do another session for the same amount of time, then take another break. After a few of these, you take a longer break.

Try teaching another student something you find difficult to understand. Prepare something before you meet up with them then explain it to your friend as well as you can.

Let me know how the studying goes.

Talk to you soon!

Hi there,

Adding a virtual background is great fun and quite easy to do when you know how. Let me explain.

First, look for the arrow next to the camera icon at the bottom of the screen. Click on that and then click on 'settings'. Another window will open, and you have to find the option on the left that says video and image backgrounds'. You have to click on that if you don't have any images, you can add them by clicking on the plus sign which you can find on the right. Choose the image you want and then click on 'apply' and that's it!

I hope you have lots of fun but let me know if you have any questions.

Speak soon,  
Basel



- 1 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
- The teacher said, You must follow school rules, Hatem."
  - The teacher said, You must follow school rules, Hatem".
  - The teacher said "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
  - The teacher said, "You must follow school rules, Hatem."
- 2 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
- Mona, who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
  - Mona who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
  - Mona; who was the first to offer help, was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
  - Mona; who was the first to offer help was a volunteer from the UNICEF.
- 3 Which of the following is correctly structured?
- By next year, I will buy a new car.
  - By next year, I will have been bought a new car.
  - By next year, I should have bought a new car.
  - By next year, I will have bought a new car.
- 4 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part time accountant.
  - Adel, who lives in Aswan is a part-time accountant.
  - Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.
  - Adel who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.
- 5 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- Ahmad studied six subjects last term Arabic, English, biology, chemistry German and physics.
  - Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.
  - Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.
  - Ahmad studied six subjects last term Arabic, English, biology chemistry, German and physics.
- 6 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- Wael did you understand why I had travelled to luxor alone?
  - Wael, did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone
  - Wael, did you understand why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
  - Wael, did you understand Why I had travelled to Luxor alone?
- 7 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- I asked Ali, "Did he ask for his money back"?
  - I asked Ali did he ask for his money back.
  - I asked Ali, "Did he ask for his money back?"
  - I asked Ali, "did he ask for his money back"?
- 8 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- The leader, who managed to unite his people, was open minded.
  - The leader who managed to unite his people, was open minded.
  - The leader, who managed to unite his people was open minded.
  - The leader, who managed to unite his people, was openminded.
- 9 Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?
- "Your right to worry," said the teacher.
  - "Your right to worry," said the teacher,
  - "You're right to worry." said the teacher.
  - "Your right to worry," said the teacher.

- Which of the following is structurally correct?
- We still don't know the cause for the fire.
  - We still don't know the reason of the fire.
  - We still don't know the cause of the fire.
  - We still don't know what causes of the fire.

- Which of the following is structurally correct?
- We should take on more staff during holidays.
  - We should take off more staff during holidays.
  - We should take up more staff during holidays.
  - We should take to more staff during holidays.

- Which of the following is structurally correct?
- You should stop to smoke, it is a fatal habit.
  - You should stop to smoking, it is a fatal habit.
  - You should stop smoking, it is a fatal habit.
  - You should stop him to smoke, it is a fatal habit.

- 10 I forgot to call Ali yesterday. This means .....
- I called Ali but I forgot that I did.
  - I didn't find Ali's number to call him.
  - I didn't remember to call Ali.
  - I didn't remember calling Ali.

- 11 On my way home, I stopped to talk to Heba. This means .....
- I stopped talking to Heba on my way home.
  - I no longer talk to Heba.
  - I met Heba on my home and talked to her.
  - I met Heba on my home, but I didn't talk to her.

- 12 Which of the following is structurally correct?
- We should put away the meeting until next Monday.
  - We should put off the meeting until next Monday.
  - We should put on the meeting until next Monday.
  - We should put up the meeting until next Monday.

- 13 Which of the following is structurally correct?
- He managed to find a solution for the problem of his own.
  - He succeeded to find a solution to the problem of his own.
  - He managed to finding a solution to the problem on his own.
  - He was able to find a solution to the problem on his own.

- 14 Which of the following is structurally correct?
- Dad always objects to staying up late.
  - Dad always objects to stay up late.
  - Dad always objects to staying on late.
  - Dad never wants to staying up late.



- One of the bad eating habits is eating meals that contain a lot of fat. This leads to a significant increase in weight and causes many diseases.**
- ① من عادات الأكل السيئة تناول وجبات تحتوي على الكثير من الدهون. وهذا يؤدي إلى زيادة كبيرة في الوزن ويسبب العديد من الأمراض.  
 ② من عادات الأكل السيئة تناول وجبات تحتوي على الكثير من الدهون. وهذا يؤدي إلى زيادة ضئيلة في الوزن ويسبب العديد من الأمراض.  
 ③ من عادات الأكل المنتشرة تناول وجبات تحتوي على الكثير من الدهون. وهذا يؤدي إلى زيادة كبيرة في الوزن ويسبب العديد من الأمراض.  
 ④ من عادات الأكل السيئة تناول وجبات تحتوي على الكثير من الدهون. وهذا يؤدي إلى زيادة كبيرة في الوزن ويسبب العديد من الأمراض.

- Modern technology and scientific inventions help countries to make real progress in all areas.**

- ① تساعد التكنولوجيا الحديثة والاختراعات العلمية البلدان على تحقيق تقدم حقيقي في جميع المجالات.  
 ② تساعد التكنولوجيا الحديثة والاختراعات العلمية البلدان على تحقيق تقدم حقيقي في جميع المجالات.  
 ③ ساعدت التكنولوجيا الحديثة والاختراعات العلمية البلدان على تحقيق تقدم حقيقي في جميع المجالات.  
 ④ تساعد التكنولوجيا الحديثة والاختراعات العلمية البلدان على تحقيق تقدم حقيقي في جميع المجالات.

- Eco-tourism is a new type of tourism that attracts many tourists from all over the world to enjoy a clean and pollution-free environment.**

- ① السياحة البيئية هي نوع جديد من السياحة التي تجذب العديد من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم للتمتع ببيئة نظيفة وبجانبية من التلوث.  
 ② السياحة البيئية هي نوع جديد من السياحة التي تجذب العديد من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم للتمتع ببيئة نظيفة وخالية من التلوث.  
 ③ السياحة البيئية هي نوع قديم من السياحة التي تجذب العديد من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم للتمتع ببيئة نظيفة وخالية من التلوث.  
 ④ السياحة البيئية هي نوع جديد من السياحة التي تدعو العديد من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم للتمتع ببيئة نظيفة وخالية من التلوث.

- Violence films have a negative effect on children behaviors and make them extremely violent and aggressive.**

- ① أفلام العنف لها تأثير سلبي على مظهر الأطفال وتجعلها شديدة العنف والعذوانية.  
 ② أفلام العنف لها تأثير سلبي على سلوكيات الأطفال وتجعلها يكرها العنف والعذوانية.  
 ③ أفلام العنف لها تأثير سلبي على سلوكيات الأطفال وتجعلها شديدة العنف والعذوانية.  
 ④ أفلام العنف لها تأثير إيجابي على سلوكيات الأطفال وتجعلها شديدة العنف والعذوانية.

- Only the person himself can develop his given potentials. But, like any other living being, he needs an atmosphere of warmth to give him a feeling of inner security.**

- ① يمكن للفرد نفسه فقط تطوير إمكاناته. لكنه، مثل أي كائن حي آخر، يحتاج إلى جو من الدفء لفتح شعوراً بالأمان الخارجي.  
 ② يمكن للفرد نفسه فقط تطوير إمكاناته. لكنه، مثل أي كائن حي آخر، يحتاج إلى جو من الدفء لفتح شعوراً بالأمان الداخلي.  
 ③ يمكن للفرد نفسه فقط تطوير إمكاناته. لكنه، مثل أي كائن حي آخر، يحتاج إلى غلاف من الدفء لفتح شعوراً بالأمان الداخلي.  
 ④ يمكن للفرد نفسه فقط تطوير إمكاناته. لكنه، ليس مثل أي كائن حي آخر، يحتاج إلى جو من الدفء لفتح شعوراً بالأمان الداخلي.

- Without peace, civilization couldn't flourish as wars destroy whatever progress the man has achieved.**

- ① بدون سلام لا يمكن للحضارة أن تزدهر، فالحروب تقضي على كل تقدم حققه الإنسان.  
 ② بدون سلام لا يمكن للمواطن أن تزدهر، فالحروب تقضي على كل تقدم حققه الإنسان.  
 ③ بدون سلام يمكن للحضارة أن تزدهر، فالحروب تقضي على كل تقدم حققه الإنسان.  
 ④ بدون سلام لا يمكن للحضارة أن تزدهر، فالحروب تقضي على كل تقدم سيحققه الإنسان.

- Artificial intelligence is the issue that occupies the minds of many people especially scientists. Everyone is afraid of being dominated by machines.**

- ① الذكاء في الصناعة هو القضية التي تشغل بال كثير من الناس وخاصة العلماء. الجميع يخاف من أن تهيمن عليه الآلات.  
 ② الذكاء الاصطناعي هو القضية التي تشغل بال كثير من الناس وخاصة العلماء. الجميع يخاف من أن تهيمن عليه الآلات.  
 ③ الذكاء الاصطناعي هو القضية التي تشغل بال كثير من الناس وخاصة العلماء. الجميع يتوقع من أن تهيمن عليه الآلات.  
 ④ الذكاء الاصطناعي هو القضية التي تشغل بال كثير من الناس وخاصة العلماء. الجميع يخاف من أن تتفوق عليه الآلات.

تعلم اللغات لتكون قادرين على الاستفادة من ثقافات الشعوب الأخرى وتقدمهم العلمي.  
 We learn languages to be able to benefit from other peoples' cultures and scientific progress.  
 We learn languages to be able to benefit from other peoples' cultures and scientific progress.  
 We learn languages to be able to benefit from other peoples' agriculture and scientific progress.  
 We learn languages to be able to benefit from another peoples' cultures and scientific progress.

- ① إن العمل الجماعي هو السبيل الأفضل لنجاح أي مجال. فكل فرد في المجموعة يتعامل مع الآخرين من أجل العمل المطلوب.

Teamwork is the best way to successful in any field. Each member of the group deals with others in order to accomplish the required work.

Teamwork is the best way to succeed in any field. All member of the group deals with others in order to accomplish the required work.

Teamwork is the best way to succeed in any field. Each member of the group deals with others in order to accomplish the required work.

Teamwork is the best way to succeed in any field. Each member of the group deal with others in order to accomplish the required work.

- ① يتطلب تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتي من الغذاء استخدام أساليب الزراعة والصناعة الحديثة.

Achieving self-sufficiency in food acquires the use of modern agricultural and industrial methods.  
 Achieving self-sufficiency in food requires the use of modern agricultural and artificial methods.  
 Achieving self-sufficiency in food requires the use of modern agricultural and industrial method.  
 Achieving self-sufficiency in food requires the use of modern agricultural and industrial methods.

- ① يجب أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتحقيق التقدم والتنمية واستعادة مكانة مصر وسط البلدان المتحضرة في كل مكان في العالم.

We must do our best to achieve progress, and development and restore Egypt's position among civilized countries everywhere in the world.

We must do our best to achieve progress, and development and restore Egypt's location among civilized countries everywhere in the world.

We had to do our best to achieve progress, and development and restore Egypt's position among civilized countries everywhere in the world.

We must do our best to achieve progress, and development and restore Egypt's position among civilized countries everywhere in the world.

- ① لقد أظهرت الأبحاث أن الأشخاص السعداء يعيشون لفترة أطول. وأكثر صحة وأكثر نجاحاً.

Research has shown that happy people live longer, healthier and more relaxing.  
 Research has shown that happy people live longest, healthier and more relaxed.  
 Research has been shown that happy people live longer, healthier and more relaxed.  
 Research has shown that happy people live longer, healthier and more relaxed.

- ① تفهذ الحكومة المصرية حالياً عدد من المشروعات العملاقة وذلك لتوفير فرص عمل للشباب وحل مشكلة البطالة.

The Egyptian government is currently implementing a number of mega projects in order to provide job opportunities for young people, solve the unemployment problem.  
 The Egyptian government is currently implementing a number of tiny projects in order to provide job opportunities for young people, solve the unemployment problem.  
 The Egyptian government is currently implementing a number of mega projects in order to provide job opportunities for young people, solve the employment problem.  
 The Egyptian government is currently implementing a number of mega projects in order to prove job opportunities for young people, solve the unemployment problem.



# Exercises on Story

- 1 Pupils should be helped to ..... a positive approach to the environment.  
 (a) adopt (b) adapt (c) teach (d) listen
- 2 It is difficult to ..... the public of the need for change.  
 (a) discourage (b) help (c) convince (d) encourage
- 3 Pay no attention to his moods-he's just a ..... old man.  
 (a) grumpy (b) helpful (c) sensible (d) reasonable
- 4 She got insanely ..... and there was a terrible fight..  
 (a) happy (b) faint (c) jealous (d) silent
- 5 They wanted more stories about ..... people and fewer stories about the rich and famous.  
 (a) unique (b) special (c) wealthy (d) ordinary
- 6 Her dream is to marry a tall, dark, ..... businessman.  
 (a) ugly (b) fool (c) handsome (d) unhealthy
- 7 We're particularly ..... of our company's environmental record.  
 (a) pride (b) bride (c) interested (d) proud
- 8 Leave the keys with the desk .....  
 (a) employer (b) client (c) customer (d) clerk
- 9 I was ..... that we played so well yet still lost.  
 (a) hopeful (b) disappointed (c) surprising (d) glad
- 10 It is cheaper to live in ..... than in a hotel.  
 (a) castle (b) palace (c) luxury (d) lodgings
- 11 ..... revenge will never give you a sense of peace or closure-you'll remain just as angry.  
 (a) Taking (b) Giving (c) Doing (d) Get
- 12 We don't have enough books, so you'll have to .....  
 (a) sell (b) divide (c) connect (d) share
- 13 Eye colour shows your genetic .....  
 (a) inherit (b) heir (c) inheritance (d) successor
- 14 Have you heard? Sally and Ray are getting ..... That is great.  
 (a) divorced (b) engaged (c) alone (d) away
- 15 Since he was stuck in a lift a year ago he hasn't ..... to get back into one.  
 (a) dared (b) hated (c) avoided (d) want

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Overpopulation<sup>(1)</sup> refers to an undesirable<sup>(2)</sup> condition in which the number of existing human beings exceeds<sup>(3)</sup> the actual carrying capacity<sup>(4)</sup> of the earth. It has many causes which range from a decline in the death rate<sup>(5)</sup> to early marriages and more. The ill-effects<sup>(6)</sup> of overpopulation are quite severe. Our planet can produce only a limited<sup>(7)</sup> amount of water and food. Thus, overpopulation causes environmental damage including deforestation<sup>(8)</sup>, pollution, etc. Moreover, it rises due to overpopulation. There are more people than job opportunities. As a result, unemployment<sup>(9)</sup> gives rise to crimes like theft and more. We also have pandemics<sup>(10)</sup> and epidemics which happen due to overpopulation. Another ill-effect is malnutrition<sup>(11)</sup> and starvation<sup>(12)</sup>. When there are scarce resources, these diseases will likely be on the rise. Most importantly, we have a shortage of water which makes it tougher for people to get access<sup>(13)</sup> to clean water. There are many solutions which we may take up to prevent

1. الزيادة السكانية  
 2. غير مرغوب  
 3. يتفوق  
 4. القدرة / استيعاب  
 5. معدل الوفيات  
 6. آثار جانبية  
 7. محدود  
 8. إزالة الغابات  
 9. البطالة  
 10. الأوبئة  
 11. سوء التغذية  
 12. المجاعة

overpopulation. The best measure is family planning<sup>(14)</sup> to ensure proper spacing between the births of the children and limiting the number of children as per income. The government must make the horrors of overpopulation reach the public through the use of media. Moreover, better education can help implement<sup>(15)</sup> social changes which can curb overpopulation. Many governments of countries waive<sup>(16)</sup> a certain part of income tax for married couples with one or two children. All in all, overpopulation is no less than a curse<sup>(17)</sup> that poses a permanent threat to the development of any country, it is essential to stop the flood of population. To do that, one must indulge in proper family and creating balance in society for a better world.

- 16 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
 The main idea of the second paragraph is .....  
 (a) Pros and cons of overpopulation  
 (b) The advantages of overpopulation  
 (c) The reasons for overpopulation  
 (d) The reasons and the results of overpopulation
- 17 According to the passage, job vacancies .....  
 (a) are the same rate of overpopulation  
 (b) increases because of overpopulation  
 (c) have no relation with overpopulation  
 (d) decreases because of overpopulation
- 18 One of the synonyms of the underline word "curb" is .....  
 (a) Express (b) Take out (c) Control (d) Silence
- 19 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
 (a) Overpopulation (b) Environmental damage  
 (c) Deforestation (d) Pollution
- 20 The author believes that family's role in solving the problem of overpopulation is .....  
 (a) moving to the outskirts (b) building new houses  
 (c) Having a lot of birth  
 (d) Limiting the number of children and Planning the spacing between births
- 21 Another solution of this problem is .....  
 (a) Providing opportunities (b) Decreasing the marriage age  
 (c) Restricting the child marriage (d) Conserving the natural resources
- 22 Another reason for overpopulation is .....  
 (a) Lack of female education (b) The long spacing between births  
 (c) Lack of natural resources (d) imposing high taxes on people





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The boss has made my father ..... the company.  
 a left b leaving c leave d to leave
- 2 We can't ..... our mind about where to live after getting married.  
 a decide b make up c do up d determine
- 3 Diana doesn't ..... very cheerful today, does she?  
 a seem b appear c looks d see
- 4 Where's my car parked?" "Well, it could be ..... really."  
 a anywhere b nowhere c somewhere d everywhere
- 5 You'll have to apologize ..... so rude.  
 a for to be b to be c for being d at being
- 6 Someone rang up, but I ..... to find you.  
 a couldn't b could hardly c can't d wasn't able
- 7 It's not worth ..... so much money for it.  
 a to pay b pay c paying d paid
- 8 I don't feel like ..... out in the rain.  
 a going b go c to go d you will go
- 9 My sister ..... of mice.  
 a has afraid b has fear c is afraid d is fear
- 10 The wages in this factory ..... very high.  
 a is b isn't c don't d are
- 11 The train is perhaps the best ..... of transport.  
 a mean b means c road d ways
- 12 Dr Smith is going ..... hospital to see his patients.  
 a to b into the c at d to the
- 13 That was a very useful ....., thank you very much.  
 a advices b lot of advice c advice d piece of advice
- 14 The concrete is still wet. Try not ..... on it.  
 a to walk b walk c walking d to walking
- 15 Did you go to London ..... your own?  
 a of b at c on d by
- 16 Of course I'd like ..... come to dinner.  
 a they to b them c they d them to
- 17 Is it worth spending ..... time at school?  
 a so many b so c too many d so much
- 18 My God! ..... mess! It's awful!  
 a What a b What c How d How a
- 19 Please, ..... me to buy my cousin a present, or I'll forget!  
 a remind b tell c remember d let
- 20 The United Nations is an important ..... that works all over the world.  
 a firm b company c workhouse d organization
- 21 A ..... young man stood at the door.  
 a well-dress b well-dressed c dress-well d dressed-well
- 22 Frank, ..... are you?  
 a how heavy b what heavy c how weight d how much weigh

Read the following dialogue:

Hesham, a university graduate, and his grandpa are talking about jobs.

How are you, Hesham? I see you are busy. ....?

Fine, thank you. I'm looking for a job in the news advertisements.  
 What kind of jobs are you looking for?

I think it will take you many years to find a job in a bank. ....?

What do you mean by being flexible?

All right, but ....?

You can learn new skills in one of the youth centres for work.

Of course, you will benefit a lot.

Translate into Arabic:

Thanks to scientific revolutions, modern technology has gifted us comfortable living opportunities.

Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless.

Lifelong learning provides us active minds and sufficient confidence to face probable life obstacles.

Scientists are doing a lot of research to stop the hazard of genetically modified agricultural products.

Translate into English:

(1) إن الجدية والعزيمة والمرونة وروح المغامرة سمات مطلوبة لتحقيق هدفك المنشود.

(2) عرفت مصر على مر التاريخ بأنها أرض التسامح الديني والتعايش السلمي بين المسلمين والمسيحيين.

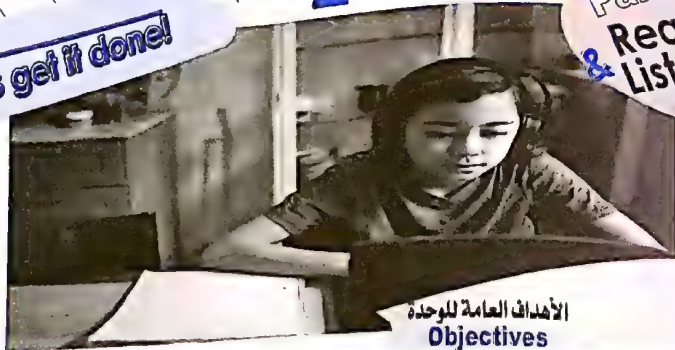
(3) تنفق الكثير من الأموال على الحروب، بينما يموت الكثير من الأطفال جوعاً.

Write a paragraph of (120 words) about "Jobs in the future":

### Enrich your language

معوقات	modified	معدل
ثورات	genetically	وراثياً
فرص	agricultural	زراعي
هدية	hazard	مجازفة / مخاطرة
فقر	religious tolerance	التسامح الديني
ثقة	peaceful coexistence	التعايش السلمي
كفء		
obstacles		
willing		
flexibility		
demand		
spirit		
wars		
revolutions		
opportunities		
gift		
poverty		
confidence		
sufficient		





الأهداف العامة للوحدة  
Objectives

Reading: A report on a study into productivity

Listening: An interview with an expert on productivity

Speaking: Brainstorm and discuss ideas to improve productivity

Language: Get something done; Causative verbs

Writing: A Reflective text

Life skills: Productivity; Self-management

### 1 Main Vocabulary

productive	إنتاجي / منتج	force (n) (v)	يجبر / إجبار / قوة	grade	درجة امتحان / صف دراسي
productivity	إنتاجية	distracted	مشوش / شارد الذهن	individual	فرد / شخص
change (n) (v)	تغيير / يغير	significantly	بشكل ملحوظ	practice	تدريبات / ممارسة
assess	يقدّر / يقيم / يحكم على	interrupt (v)	يقاطع	brainstorming	عصف ذهني
decline (n) (v)	ينقص / نقصان	awareness	وعي / إدراك	blog (n) (v)	مدونة / يقوم بالتدوين
efficient	كفء / فعال	effectiveness	فاعلية	drawback	عائق / عيب / مساوئ
efficiency	كفاءة	error	خطأ	regularly	بانتظام
raise	يرفع / يربي / يجمع	pollution (n)	تلوث	evidence	دليل
vary	يتغير / يختلف / يتنوع	strategy (n)	استراتيجية / خطة	pros and cons	مميزات وعيوب
various	متنوع	delay (n) (v)	تأخير / يؤخر	electricity	كهرباء
variety	تشكيلة / تنوع	excuse (n) (v)	عذر / يبرر	concentrate	يركّز
state (n) (v)	يصرّح / يذكر / يبين	performance	أداء / إجراء / فاعلية	concentration	تركيز
tend	يميل إلى / ميل	drawing	رسم / صورة / نقش	priority	أولوية
brainstorming session	جلسة عصف ذهني	researcher	باحث	findings	نتائج
procrastination	تسويف / تأجيل / تهاون	repeat	يكرر	memory	ذاكرة / ذاكرة
procrastinate	يماطل / يؤخر / يسوف	mental / mentally	عقلي / عقائلي	stressed	متعب / مضغوط
analyse (v)	يحلل	diet	نظام غذائي	sort (n) (v)	نوع / ينفق
analysis (n)	تحليل	pillow	وسادة / مخدة	structure	بنية / التركيب / ينظم
evaluate	يقيم	ear plugs	سدادات الأذن	alternatives	بدائل
inevitable	حتمي / لا مفر منه	factors	عوامل / عناصر	suppose (v)	يفترض / يتخيل
records	سجلات	permission	إذن / تصريح	difference (n)	فارق / اختلاف
cyclists (n)	راكبي الدراجات	aim	هدف / يهدف	world record	أفضل أداء عالمي
		process	عملية / سلسلة من الخطوات	benefit (n) (v)	فائدة / منفعة / ينفع
		progress	تقدم		

### Additional Vocabulary

level	مستوى	fail	يفشل
subject	مادة	session	جلسة
task	مهمة / واجب	healthily	بطريقة صحية
achieve	يحقّق / ينجّز	quite	إلى حد ما
mention	يذكر	idea	فكرة
conclusions	نتائج / استنتاجات	exactly	بالضبط
diary	يوميات	Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
answer	يجيب / إجابة / رد	expert	خبير
expect	يتوقع	period	فترة / حصّة دراسية
weather	الطقس	common	شائع
in detail	بالتفصيل	amount	كمية
exam	امتحان	believe	يعتقد
group	مجموعة / يقسم لمجموعات	copy	نسخة / ينسخ
daily life	حياة يومية	become	يصبح
reach	يصل	ending	نهاية
positive impact	تأثير إيجابي	avoid	يتجنب
cycling team	فريق ركوب الدراجات	interesting	ممتع
follow	يتبع	below	تحت
waste	يضيع	tips	نصائح
allow	يسمح	discover	يكشف
discuss	يناقش	show	يعرض / عرض
refresh	ينعش / يشطّ	summarise	يلخص
surprised	مندعش	area	منطقة
massive	ضخم / هائل	focus	يركّز / تركيز

### Synonyms & Antonyms

word	meaning	Synonym	Antonym
productive	منتج	effective - fruitful	fruitless - vain
vary	يتنوع	diversify - mix - alter	keep - maintain - preserve
procrastination	تسويف / تأجيل / تهاون	delay - slowness	advance - quickness
allow	يسمح	permit - enable	forbid - prevent
fail	يفشل	collapse - fall - be in vain	succeed - flourish - prosper
drawback	مساوئ	disadvantage - weakness - obstacle	advantage - benefit - blessing
significantly	بشكل ملحوظ	remarkably - considerably	pointlessly - worthlessly
error	خطأ	mistake - fault	correction - adjusting
efficiency	كفاءة / فاعلية	effectiveness - potency	ineffectiveness - inability
		productiveness	inefficiency



### 3 Prepositions

instead	بدلاً من	carry	يحمل
analysis	تحليل	depend	يعتمد على
chat	يتحدث عن	lead	يؤدي إلى
worried	قلق بشأن	excuse	يبرر
result	نتيجة	look	يبحث
increase	زيادة في	divide	يقسم إلى
surprised	متفاجئ بواسطة	concentrate	يركّز
distracted	مشتت بسبب	drawback	عيوب
increase	زيادة نسبية	helpful	مفيد
find out	يكتشف	at least	على الأقل
take part in	يشارك في	on time	في الوقت المحدد
put ... away	يضع بعيداً	write down	يكتب

### 4 Expressions & Idioms

looking back	تذكر ما مضى	make a better job of	يؤدي عمل أفضل
make changes to	يغير	make decisions	يقرر
set an alarm	يضع إنذاراً	Make a study plan	يضع خطة دراسية
a waste of time	هدنة للوقت	keep going with	يستمر في / يستمر
at different times	في أوقات مختلفة	change his mind	يغير رأيه
at the beginning of	في بداية	a six-month period	فترة ستة أشهر
can understand the logic	يستطيع فهم المنطق	have a positive impact on	لها تأثير إيجابي على
put the ideas into practice	يضع الأفكار على أرض الواقع	make the revision interesting	يجعل المراجعة مثيرة

### 5 Derivatives

#### Verb

produce	ينتج
vary	يغير / يختلف / يتغير
assess	يقيم / يحكم على
affect	يؤثر على
signify	يدل على / يعني
ope	يأمل / يفتش
progress	يتقدم / يتطور
analyse	يحلل

#### Noun

production	إنتاج
productivity	إنتاجية
variety	تنوع
variance	اختلاف / تباين
assessment	تقدير / تقييم
effect	تأثير / أثر
significance	أهمية / معنى
honesty	أمانة
hope/hopefulness	أمل / أمنية
progression	تقدم / تطور
analysis	تحليل

#### Adjective

productive	إنتاجي / منتج
variable	متغير / متقلب
various	متنوع
assessable	قابل للتقييم
effective	فعال / مؤثر
significant	مهم / ذو معنى
honest	صالح / أمين
hopeful	مبتهل / متفائل
hopeless	يأس / متشائم
progressive	تقدمي / متطور
analytical	تحليلي

### Definitions

to examine the nature or structure of something	للتفحص طبيعة أو بنية شيء ما
to calculate the amount or value of something	لحساب الكمية أو القيمة
a group of people think about something to create good ideas	مجموعة من الناس يفكرون في شيء ما لخلق أفكار جيدة
a decrease in the quality, quantity or importance of something	انخفاض في الجودة، الكمية أو الأهمية
a change that is caused by an event, action etc.	تغيير ناتج عن حدث، فعل، إلخ.
the quality of doing something well with no waste of time or money	جودة القيام بشيء ما بفعالية دون هدر للوقت أو المال
certain to happen and impossible to avoid	مؤكد الحدوث ولا يمكن تجنبه
to delay doing something that you should do	لتأجيل القيام بشيء ما يجب عليك فعله
doing or achieving a lot	القيام بإنجاز الكثير
the rate at which you produce work and the amount produced	السرعة التي تنتج بها العمل والكمية المنتجة
to improve or develop over a period of time	لتحسين أو التطور خلال فترة زمنية
to increase the amount or level of something	لتحسين الكمية أو المستوى
to change or to be different according to the situation	لتغيير أو أن يكون مختلفاً وفقاً للوضع
to be likely to behave in a particular way or have a particular characteristic	لتكون على الأرجح يتصرف بطريقة معينة أو أن يكون له خاصية معينة

### Listening

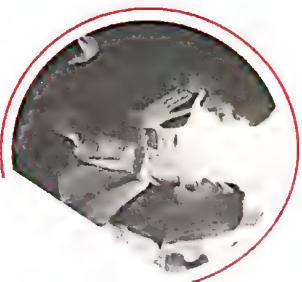
Eman: I try hard to finish my homework on time, but I can never get it all done. After just a few minutes my **productivity** levels start to **decline** and I start looking at my phone.

Amay: It sounds like you need to **raise your productivity** so you can get more homework done.

Eman: So I need to become more **productive**?

Amay: Yes, exactly. You need to do good work, but get it done faster by increasing your **efficiency**. First, **assess** when and where you find it easiest to work. You could try to **vary** the time and place where you work and see what happens at different times and in different places.

Eman: That's a good idea. I'll try doing that and hopefully I'll soon be making more **progress** with my homework.







## Reading WB page 39

A report on a recent study into productivity amongst students

In our research study, we assessed the productivity levels of students in eight schools. The aim was to find out which students had an increase in the students' productivity levels while they are studying. We chose a group of 250 students and asked them to keep a diary over a six-month period. In these diaries they wrote down how much time they spent studying every day and what they achieved.

At the start of the study, we asked all the students to make a change to their study habits. We wanted to find out what effect this change would have on the students' productivity. We repeated this process at the start of every month for the rest of the study to look at the effects of varying study habits.

Our analysis of the students' diaries resulted in some interesting conclusions. We noticed that most students' productivity levels increased significantly when they got up earlier to study before school. This was even true for students who had said they weren't very efficient when they studied early in the morning.

On the other hand, most students' productivity levels declined significantly when they regularly studied until late into the evening. Another interesting finding was that studying with other students had a very positive effect on some students' productivity levels, but a very negative effect on other students' productivity levels.

In conclusion, we can state that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive, but the effects of other factors, like whether or not students study alone, vary, depending on the individual.



## Reading WB page 39

Things to avoid when studying, to help productivity

### Don't procrastinate

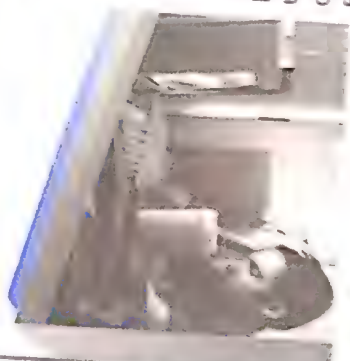
There is one common error which stops students from being productive: procrastination. Procrastination is when we delay doing something important. Students often look for an excuse to do other things, such as tidy their bedrooms, when they should be studying. Make a study plan and follow it!

### 1. Don't study all night

Another bad habit that some students have is studying all night. (Sometimes this is because they have been procrastinating in all day!) Studying at night instead of sleeping does not allow the body and brain to rest. It's important to switch off to study effectively the next day.

### 3. Put the phone away

Some teachers allow students to keep their phone with them in class. But students shouldn't make themselves be distracted by their phones. Even better, hand it to the teacher at the beginning of the class – they will let you have it back at the end!



## Reading WB page 38

Shert

You said last week your revision was going slowly. Are you getting more done now?

Hisham

To be honest, my progress is going well this week. My dad will get some changes done to my room to help me raise my efficiency.

Shert

Really? Wow! What sort of changes? Well, he's going to put a desk under my window. The desk will be big enough for two people, so I can study with friends. Do you want to come over on Saturday and we can study together?

Hisham

That sounds great. We need to get our English project done and then we can revise for Science.

Shert

Great. I usually get a lot more work done when I study with friends. What time do you want to come?

Hisham

Well, I prefer to study in the morning. I got a lot of work done when I studied yesterday morning. How about 9 o'clock?

Shert

Great, see you then.

Hisham



# Language Notes

## 7 Notice the Difference

custom	عادة (خاص بجمهورية)	habit	عادة (خاص بفرس)
result in - lead to	يتسبب في	result from	نتيجة من
on time	في الوقت المناسب (والجيد)	in time	يتبين من
most + اسم مذكر	معظم / الغالبية	most of + اسم مذكر	معظم / الغالبية
damage	تلف / يدمر	damages	تلفيات
save	يقتل	safe	آمن
other	آخر	another	آخر (مكرر)

- Grandpa was born in 1950, ..... when few houses had electricity.
  - by the time
  - on time
  - in time
  - at a time
- Pollution will ..... to serious problems in the future.
  - lead
  - result
  - cause
  - bring
- Pollution will ..... in serious problems in the future.
  - lead
  - result
  - cause
  - bring
- Healthy lifestyle ..... begin when you're young.
  - customary
  - customs
  - habits
  - traditional
- Is it ..... to tip hairdressers in this country?
  - a habit
  - a custom
  - custom
  - a customary
- It's ..... for men to get married in black in my country.
  - tradition
  - a custom
  - traditionally
  - habit
- Most ..... are honest, patient and hard-working.
  - the teachers of
  - of the teacher
  - the teachers
  - of the teachers
- The storm didn't ..... much damage.
  - do
  - make
  - reason
  - take
- Smoking is likely to ..... your health permanently.
  - damages
  - damage
  - create
  - provide
- There are eight pets in my house. Six are cats and ..... are dogs.
  - others
  - another
  - the other
  - the others

Don't get confused!

(-) (s) (s') (s')

عذر جمع الكلمات الزائدة إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها لاسم:

usually have a ten-minute break for coffee at midday.  
a two-hour meeting

a week's time  
While I was walking, I met ..... boy.  
ten-year  
I will have finished my study in .....  
two year

a ten-year boy  
a six-day holiday  
six years' time  
ten years'  
a ten-year  
two years'

let's get it done!

I will have finished my study in ..... time.  
two year  
two years

produce  
product  
productive (adj.)  
production  
producer(n)

- These goods are efficiently produced in small associations.
  - نتج
  - He has eliminated dairy products from his diet.
  - My time spent in the library was very productive.
  - The country has resumed normal oil production.
  - Libya is a major oil producer.

- you need to make changes if you want to increase .....  
 produce productively  
 The new ..... really look off and everybody wanted it.  
 produce productively  
 At the harvest, farmers fill many baskets with their garden .....  
 production productively  
 Criminals are sometimes the ..... of bad homes.  
 product producer productively  
 One reason for dams being built is to ..... electricity.  
 produce product producer  
 Australia is one of the main ..... of wool.  
 products producers  
 By September, the new motors were in .....  
 product production productivity  
 Medical ..... are exempted from state taxes.  
 products production productively  
 To make our economy flourish, all Egyptian ..... should be of high quality.  
 productivity production products

## assess, estimate & appreciate

assess	يقيم
estimate	يقيم / يقدر / يقيس
appreciate	يقدّر (تقديره)

- Authorities are ..... damage caused by last night's stormy weather.
  - appreciating
  - assessing
  - doing
  - producing
- The company ..... my effort.
  - appreciates
  - sums
  - estimates
  - coasts
- The ..... costs of the building project are well over £1 million.
  - appreciated
  - sums
  - estimated
  - coasts
- It was difficult to ..... how many trees had been destroyed.
  - appreciate
  - produce
  - coast
  - estimate
- Marriage ..... breaks easily as women never ..... their husbands' efforts.
  - appreciate
  - sum
  - coast
  - cost

The insurers will need to assess the flood damage.  
 It has been estimated that one in eight couples is infertile.  
 We all appreciate our teachers.







14 The facts are clearly ..... in the report. **forced** **stated**

15 They have launched a campaign to raise ..... of COVID-19. **showed** **awaken**

16 They don't have information yet to evaluate the ..... of those programmes. **wor** **affect**

17 Young children ..... to get sick more often than adults. **effectiveness** **tend**

18 We had a very ..... meeting. I felt we solved lots of problems. **interrupt** **practise**

19 So I started to cycle as fast as I could and soon began to catch up with the other ..... **uncommunicative** **productive**

20 We're making slow but steady ..... with the decorating. **cycle** **planes**

21 We aim to provide our clients with a / an ..... and friendly service. **pout** **sickness**

22 The strategies that victims use to cope with bullying also ..... by gender and age. **efficient** **subservient**

23 I don't eat meat, only fish, but there's a good ..... available here. **various** **vary**

24 The blood samples were sent to the lab to be ..... **various** **variable**

25 This is no time for ..... We need to get to work. **wasted** **drunk**

26 The role of stay-at-home mother is more positively ..... in working-class communities. **procrastination** **productivity**

27 The technique is being tried in classrooms to ..... what effects it may have. **wasted** **analyse**

28 According to official ..... there were 21 murders in the city that year. **affect** **won**

29 The new vaccine has proved its ..... in fighting COVID-19. **recons** **records**

30 Regular tests enable the teacher to monitor the ..... of each child. **efficiency** **laziness**

31 We will come to a decision only after careful ..... of the problem. **progressive** **weak**

32 You're not ..... to talk during the exam. **analysis** **delay**

33 The boss ..... the project to see if it had been worthwhile. **allow** **allowed**

34 After listening to the pros and ..... the teacher gave him permission to go ahead. **frustrated** **excluded**

35 He was an experienced player who was always seeking to improve his ..... **cats** **cons**

36 The school students were ..... by the noise outside the classroom. **loss** **perforce**

37 ..... encouraged **distracted** **progressed**

38 ..... a cure for cancer is one of the biggest challenges facing medical ..... **researchers** **searchers**

39 ..... has an effect on both your physical and ..... health. **mechanics** **plumbers**

40 ..... a deep breath and rested my pounding head against the feather soft ..... **maintain** **pillow**

41 ..... had been depressed since the ..... of his father. **pin** **pole**

42 ..... to avoid any outside noise. **death** **died**

43 The vaccination program has been a major ..... in the improvement of health standards. **ears** **wigs**

44 I'll make few calls and I'm going to send my medical ..... to the specialists. **factitious** **factory**

45 The message is ready and short, but there are some spelling ..... so remember to ..... **findings** **fainted**

46 ..... you, but the road ahead is very bad and you should turn back. **errors** **wrong**

47 ..... over the past few years. **explode** **interpret**

48 Donations have decreased ..... over the past few years. **significantly** **significance**

49 She was active raising ..... and money for serious diseases. **significantly** **insignificance**

50 There is a connection between ..... and the death of trees. **wors** **aware**

51 Change your life today. Don't gamble on the future, act now, without ..... **productive** **population**

52 The charity is drawing up a ..... to meet the needs of the homeless. **procrastinate** **delay**

53 He said that they have to get ..... from the minister to test the new drug. **penalty** **plane**

54 We hope to prevent anything ..... from happening. **allow** **accept**

55 There are some big ..... to marriage - you do lose a lot of your freedom. **unpleasant** **pleasant**

56 The parade was very well ..... and passed without mishap. **merits** **prevented**

57 This latest novel confirms her prominent position ..... today's writers. **organise** **organised**

58 ..... , you will become more skilled. **amongst** **below**

59 Every ..... has rights which must never be taken away. **fear** **weakness**

60 Have an ..... in life, or your energies will all be wasted. **individuality** **machine**

61 The ..... situation is good, despite a few minor problems. **aimlessness** **aim**

62 ..... over here **over** **overall**



- 1104 The release of the hostages could not be achieved without the use of .....  
 a) armed b) force c) impact d) power  
 1105 ..... friendship is like sound health, the value of it is seldom known until it be lost.  
 a) True b) Truly c) True d) Aimless  
 1106 There is space here only to ..... very briefly the research on languages.  
 a) summarise b) surprise c) waste d) hate  
 1107 The stranger's question ..... me so that I temporarily lost my tongue.  
 a) surprised b) surprised c) discussed d) believed  
 1108 Bad weather was the main ..... to camping in the far north.  
 a) drawback b) advantage c) pros d) merit  
 1109 Most managers work in government, after all, not to enrich themselves but to have some positive ..... on their community.  
 a) drawback b) affect c) influential d) impact  
 1110 Psychological studies were emphasizing the ..... of the family.  
 a) important b) unimportance c) importance d) tolerant  
 1111 Headings and sub-headings further clarify the ..... of the article.  
 a) loss b) destruction c) structure d) alternative  
 1112 There's a big ..... between knowing that something is true, and being able to prove it.  
 a) difference b) differentiate c) awareness d) pollution  
 1113 The government does not want to go to war unless all other ..... have failed.  
 a) solve b) alternatives c) difference d) cyclists  
 1114 Before I interviewed the writer, I read his book again just to ..... my memory.  
 a) reread b) rewrite c) damage d) refresh  
 1115 Let us ..... for a moment that the news is really true.  
 a) interrupt b) sleep c) suppose d) force  
 1116 The wind farm will generate enough ..... for some 30,000 homes.  
 a) electricity b) awareness c) delay d) efficiency  
 1117 This exercise will enhance your powers of attention and .....  
 a) consideration b) concentration c) mental d) healthy  
 1118 Official ..... show that 44 businesses have stopped trading in the last 12 months.  
 a) ports b) cords c) records d) forks  
 1119 She was ..... furious at having been deceived.  
 a) absoluteness b) very c) absolutely d) extreme  
 1120 He ..... maths but passed all his other subjects.  
 a) felt b) failed c) succeeded d) succeeded in  
 1121 I hope that the decision taken today will be to the ..... of the whole nation.  
 a) damage b) benefit c) destruction d) cons  
 1122 For a long time it was thought to be a harmless substance, but we now have ..... the contrary.  
 a) delay b) evidence c) records d) prove  
 1123 The crops are ..... sprayed with pesticides.  
 a) regularly b) irregular c) regular d) regularly

كتاب قواعد الصالحة  
للإثبات العامة

# Causative

1 I had (got) my room cleaned.

2 I cleaned my room.

3 I had my hair cut.

4 I got my hair cut.

في المبني للمعلوم

have - let - make

مفعول عاقل

inf.

مصدر دون to

The teacher had us do some extra work today.

Toka let Jana play with her.

Jana makes Toka do her homework before sleeping.

في المبني للمعلوم

get - allow - force - cause - permit

مفعول عاقل

to + inf.

مصدر

Al Daiif got Seif to go with him to the club.

The bright light caused her to blink.

The doctor allowed the patient to eat anything.

I forced my daughters to sleep early.

My father permits me to go out at night every Friday.

في المبني للمعلوم

have - get

مفعول غير عاقل أو عاقل في حالة مجهول

P.P

الحرية

I have my hair cut.

I had my teeth checked yesterday.

Jana caused Toka to be hit by her teacher.

We always get our clothes washed.

Ali is getting his car repaired.

لاحظ صيغة السؤال والجواب مع causative

Do you usually get your room cleaned?

No, I clean it myself.

Did you have your meal prepared?

No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.

لاحظ صيغة المبني والمفعول مع causative

I won't get my room tidied. I'll tidy it by myself.

Get your hair cut! It's too long.





## Causative verbs

- ▶ We use the verb **make** to say that someone or a situation forced someone else to do something.  
استخدم الفعل **make** لنقول ان شخصا ما او موقفا اجبر شخصا اخر على فعل شيء ما.
- ▶ We use the verb **let** and **allow** to say that someone has permission to do something.  
استخدم الافعال **let** - **allow** لنقول ان شخصا ما لديه اذن للفعل شيء ما.
- ▶ The teacher sometimes **lets** us **watch** a film.  
The teacher sometimes **allows** us to **watch** a film.
- ▶ We use the verb **stop** to say that someone or a situation makes it impossible to continue doing something:  
استخدم الفعل **stop** لنقول ان شخصا ما او موقفا يجعل من المستحيل الاستمرار في فعل شيء ما.
- ▶ The cold weather **stops** us from **going** outside.

يمكن استخدام causative في كل الزمنة كما يلي:

مفاع بسيط	active	Passive	She has her teacher <b>explain</b> the lesson. She gets her teacher <b>to explain</b> the lesson. She has (gets) the lesson <b>explained</b> .
مفاع مستمر	active	Passive	She is <b>having</b> her teacher <b>explain</b> the lesson. She is <b>getting</b> her teacher <b>to explain</b> the lesson. She is <b>having</b> (is <b>getting</b> ) the lesson <b>explained</b> .
مفاع ناسم	active	Passive	She has <b>had</b> her teacher <b>explain</b> the lesson. She has <b>got</b> her teacher <b>to explain</b> the lesson. She has <b>had</b> (has <b>got</b> ) the lesson <b>explained</b> .
ماضي بسيط	active	Passive	She <b>had</b> her teacher <b>explain</b> the lesson. She <b>got</b> her teacher <b>to explain</b> the lesson. She <b>had</b> (got) the lesson <b>explained</b> .
ماضي مستمر	active	Passive	She <b>was having</b> her teacher <b>explain</b> the lesson. She <b>was getting</b> her teacher <b>to explain</b> the lesson. She <b>was having</b> (was <b>getting</b> ) the lesson <b>explained</b> .
ماضي ناسم	active	Passive	She <b>had had</b> her teacher <b>explain</b> the lesson. She <b>had got</b> her teacher <b>to explain</b> the lesson. She <b>had had</b> (had <b>got</b> ) the lesson <b>explained</b> .
مستقبل بسيط	active	Passive	She <b>will have</b> her teacher <b>explain</b> the lesson. She <b>will get</b> her teacher <b>to explain</b> the lesson. She <b>will have</b> (will <b>get</b> ) the lesson <b>explained</b> .

## Exercises on Structure

- It's not easy to make Peter ..... his mind, he's very stubborn.  
 a) change      b) changes      c) change      d) to changing
- My father always ..... us go to bed early when we have exams. We have to obey his order!  
 a) got      b) to stay      c) to staying      d) staying
- I am going to have a new washing machine .....  
 a) let      b) persuaded      c) makes      d) allows
- The rain ..... us from playing football.  
 a) made      b) installed      c) insisted      d) done
- My parents ..... me finish my homework before they allow me to watch TV.  
 a) let      b) allowed      c) made      d) stopped
- We ..... our project done last night so now we can relax.  
 a) got      b) get      c) tell      d) make
- What stops you ..... as productive as you could be?  
 a) to being      b) to be      c) being      d) from being
- Jana always ..... her brothers ..... their beds.  
 a) makes / tidy      b) got / tidy      c) had / tidied      d) get / tidy
- We ..... the painter ..... our house every year.  
 a) get / painting      b) make / to paint      c) have / point      d) got / to painted
- The sergeant made the criminal .....  
 a) talked      b) to talk      c) talk      d) talking
- Mona ..... her older sister ..... her clothes yesterday.  
 a) made / to iron      b) got / to iron      c) have / iron      d) got / iron
- He'll ..... his brother ..... a watch if he passes the exam.  
 a) let / have bought      b) makes / buy      c) get / buy      d) have / buying
- The boss ..... him ..... a suit, though he wanted to wear sportswear.  
 a) makes / wear      b) got / wearing      c) had / worn      d) made / wear
- All ..... his credit card .....  
 a) got / to change      b) got / to change      c) made / to change      d) got / changed
- The manager ..... his secretary ..... the documents.  
 a) got / to be typed      b) mode / typed      c) got / type      d) had / type
- It is a very profitable business but I couldn't make him ..... up his mind to start it.  
 a) make      b) to make      c) made      d) have made
- When did you ..... your bank accounts .....?  
 a) have / check      b) get / to check      c) get / checking      d) have / checked
- Mum does not ..... me ..... sweets very often.  
 a) let / have      b) get / to have      c) get / have      d) have / had
- I have to ..... my hair ..... this week.  
 a) have / to cut      b) get / to cut      c) make / to cut      d) have / cut
- I think the boss will ..... you ..... the car.  
 a) get / washed      b) have / to wash      c) make / washing      d) have / wash



- ٤٢١ I should ..... my car ..... in the nearest gallery as soon as possible.      ٤٢١ get / sell
- ٤٢٢ My roommate doesn't ..... me ..... inside the room.      ٤٢٢ let / smoke
- ٤٢٣ The bodyguard won't ..... you into the center without your card.      ٤٢٣ be let
- ٤٢٤ It is certainly true but I can't ..... you believe it.      ٤٢٤ allow
- ٤٢٥ You should ..... him explain why he made such a mistake.      ٤٢٥ cause
- ٤٢٦ His disease ..... him from going to the party.      ٤٢٦ caused
- ٤٢٧ He asked us if it was possible for us to let him ..... the garden wall.      ٤٢٧ paint
- ٤٢٨ I have the mechanic ..... my car's role balance every year.      ٤٢٨ checked
- ٤٢٩ I want my brother ..... on the radio.      ٤٢٩ to turn
- ٤٣٠ I will have my house ..... next month.      ٤٣٠ to redecorate
- ٤٣١ His going on holiday without permission from his parents ..... them very furious.      ٤٣١ made
- ٤٣٢ We weren't ..... to take photographs inside the palace by the security staff.      ٤٣٢ had
- ٤٣٣ I had my teeth .....      ٤٣٣ checked
- ٤٣٤ I had my dentist ..... my teeth.      ٤٣٤ checks
- ٤٣٥ I went to the mechanic to have .....      ٤٣٥ checked
- ٤٣٦ I repaired my car ..... my car repaired      ٤٣٦ my car repairs
- ٤٣٧ You should get your blood pressure ..... from time to time.      ٤٣٧ measure
- ٤٣٨ The teacher ..... us copy the notes from the blackboard.      ٤٣٨ caused
- ٤٣٩ The PE teacher had us ..... around the playground four times.      ٤٣٩ run
- ٤٤٠ How often do you get ..... at the dentist's clinic?      ٤٤٠ your teeth check
- ٤٤١ My mother usually gets me ..... my bedroom at the weekend.      ٤٤١ tidied
- ٤٤٢ Hamdi's homework was not very good so he had it ..... by his elder sister.      ٤٤٢ did

- ٤٤٣ I'm getting his car .....      ٤٤٣ to repair
- ٤٤٤ I had my blood pressure ..... yesterday.      ٤٤٤ checked
- ٤٤٥ Did you have your meal ..... ?      ٤٤٥ preparing
- ٤٤٦ I went to hospital to .....      ٤٤٦ prepared
- ٤٤٧ I check my blood pressure .....      ٤٤٧ have checked my blood pressure
- ٤٤٨ Parents should get their children ..... the amount of time they spend using phones.      ٤٤٨ to limit
- ٤٤٩ They had ten students ..... into a house with a mobile phone mast in the garden.      ٤٤٩ to move
- ٤٥٠ They had the mobile phone mast ..... on.      ٤٥٠ to turn
- ٤٥١ It's probably a good idea for people who live close to mobile phone masts to get their health ..... frequently.      ٤٥١ to checking
- ٤٥٢ Mariam had the windows .....      ٤٥٢ washed
- ٤٥٣ I ..... All to go to the sports club with me, although he didn't want to go.      ٤٥٣ got
- ٤٥٤ Mai had her bad tooth ..... out by the dentist.      ٤٥٤ pull
- ٤٥٥ Aya will have her house ..... by some workmen.      ٤٥٥ decorating
- ٤٥٦ I didn't have my hair ..... yesterday.      ٤٥٦ cut
- ٤٥٧ I had my car ..... before I left the garage last week.      ٤٥٧ check
- ٤٥٨ He ..... us do many things yesterday.      ٤٥٨ has
- ٤٥٩ Before the meeting, the manager always gets the reports .....      ٤٥٩ typed
- ٤٦٠ I ..... my friend to go to the beach with me although he didn't want to go.      ٤٦٠ has
- ٤٦١ All stores must have cameras ..... as a condition to renew the licence.      ٤٦١ remove
- ٤٦٢ At ten yesterday, I ..... my kitchen sink repaired because there was a leak.      ٤٦٢ was having
- ٤٦٣ Every six months, ..... eyes ..... by the oculist.      ٤٦٣ test



me go out.

- 1 My father ..... me go out.  
☐ **allowed** ☐ **encouraged** ☐ **let** ☐ **forced**

نستخدم هنا **let** بمعنى يسمح لأن المفعول متبوع بمصدر بدون to.

me to go out.

- 1 My father sometimes ..... me to go out.  
☐ **allowed** ☐ **encourage** ☐ **let** ☐ **allows**

نستخدم هنا **allows** لأن المفعول متبوع بـ **to** والمصدر والجملة في زمن المضارع.

my homework again.

- 1 The teacher made me ..... my homework again.  
☐ **do** ☐ **to do** ☐ **done** ☐ **doing**

لاحظ اختيار **do** في المصدر بعد **made** حيث يأتي بعدها مفعول ومصدر بدون to.

my homework again.

- 1 I was made ..... my homework again.  
☐ **do** ☐ **to do** ☐ **done** ☐ **doing**

بينما هنا نختار **to do** لأن في حالة المبني للمجهول نستخدم **to** والمصدر بعد **made**.

my time.

- 1 Father always stops me ..... my time.  
☐ **waste** ☐ **from wasting** ☐ **to wasting** ☐ **of wasting**

لاحظ استخدام **stop** عندما تكون بمعنى يمنع من = **prevent from**.

me drive him home.

- 1 Ali always ..... me drive him home.  
☐ **have** ☐ **make** ☐ **gets** ☐ **has**

نستخدم هنا **has** لأن المفعول متبوع بمصدر بدون to والجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط.

me to drive him home.

- 1 Ali always ..... me to drive him home.  
☐ **have** ☐ **make** ☐ **gets** ☐ **has**

بينما هنا نختار **gets** لأن المفعول متبوع بـ **to** والمصدر والجملة في زمن المضارع البسيط.

- 1 I get the dentist ..... my teeth twice a year.  
☐ **check** ☐ **to check** ☐ **checked**

لاحظ استخدام **to check** لوجود **get** وبعدها الطبيب هو من يفحص الأسنان (مبني للمجهول).

- 1 I get my teeth ..... by the dentist twice a year.  
☐ **check** ☐ **to check** ☐ **checked**

نختار هنا **checked** لوجود **get** متبوعة بالمفعول الذي يقع عليه الفعل (مبني للمجهول).

- 1 Ali is ..... he is always lazy and never does it on his own.  
☐ **doing his homework** ☐ **getting done his homework** ☐ **done his homework**

نختار هنا صيغة **causative** لأن (علی) ليس هو من يقوم بعمل الواجب واطرف ذلك بأنه لا يحله أبدا.

- 1 Ali is ..... He is a clever student and studies hard.  
☐ **doing his homework** ☐ **getting done his homework** ☐ **done his homework**

بينما هنا لا يمكن استخدام صيغة **causative** لأن الفاعل هو من يقوم بالفعل بنفسه.

- 1 We ..... a plumber to repair a burst pipe yesterday.  
☐ **got** ☐ **are getting** ☐ **have got** ☐ **had got**

ركز دائما في الزمن حيث يوجد علامة للماضي فنختار **got** في الماضي.



## 227



Magdy changed the way he studies because he wanted to raise his productivity levels. He wrote about his experiences a week later.

### Trying to raise my productivity levels: Week 1

I tried dividing my study time into twenty-five minute periods and taking breaks between them. **I can understand the logic of doing this** and I'm sure it helps some people to **concentrate** better because they only have to concentrate for short periods. However, **the big drawback for me was that** I kept looking at the time to see when it was time to have a break. **Looking back**, I suppose I should have set an alarm instead so I didn't have to do that and then it might have been more helpful for me.



I decided to always do the task that I found the most difficult first and, of course, this was quite hard to do at first because it isn't what you naturally want to do. However, **I kept going with it** and after a few days, I noticed how it was helping me to manage my time better and meant that **I made a better job** of the unpleasant tasks than I did before. **This definitely had a positive impact** on my productivity.

I liked the idea of making a study plan because I thought it would help me to get better organised. It definitely helped me to feel less stressed about what I needed to do because I wrote down exactly what I had to do in a list and that made it seem easier to get everything done. **I was surprised by what a big difference the study plan made.** I'm definitely going to carry on making study plans.



Which of the following is structurally correct?

① I will get a mechanic check my car.  
② I will have my car checked by a mechanic.  
③ I will get my car checked by a mechanic.  
④ I will get my car checked by a mechanic.

Which sentence is correct?

① "I'm making a cake."  
② "I'm making a cake."  
③ "I'm making a cake."  
④ "I'm making a cake."

What is a topic sentence?

① A sentence that expresses the main idea.  
② A sentence that gives more details.  
③ A sentence that expresses opinion.  
④ A sentence that concludes a paragraph.

An example that gives more details.

① body paragraphs ② body paragraphs ③ introductions ④ conclusions

Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

① I don't allow my little brother to use the mobile phone for so long.  
② I don't let myself be cheated by others.  
③ It's not easy to get my friend changes his mind.  
④ I usually stop my brothers from making noise when I'm studying.

Where should the thesis statement be restated?

① In the introduction.  
② In the body paragraphs.  
③ In the conclusion.  
④ After conclusion.

Which sentence is correct?

① What is the reason for your illness?  
② What is the cause for your illness?  
③ What is the cause for your illness?  
④ What is the cause for your illness?

Which sentence is correct?

① "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.  
② "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.  
③ "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.  
④ "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.

Which sentence is correct?

① What a fantastic film!  
② What a fantastic film!  
③ What a fantastic film!  
④ What a fantastic film!

Which sentence has the correct end?

① You are clever, aren't you?  
② You are clever, aren't you?  
③ You are clever, aren't you?  
④ You are clever, aren't you!

Which sentence is correct?

① Nada said, "My father is a teacher."  
② Nada said, "My father is a teacher."  
③ Nada said, "My father is a teacher."  
④ Nada said, "My father is a teacher?"

What is the last paragraph in the essay called?

① conclusion ② body paragraph ③ introduction ④ exposition

When you conclude your essay, you should

① review your supporting ideas  
② exclude your supporting ideas  
③ develop the main idea  
④ write the conclusion of your essay.

Which of the following is structurally correct?

① I will get a mechanic check my car.  
② I will have my car checked by a mechanic.  
③ I will get my car checked by a mechanic.  
④ I will get my car checked by a mechanic.

Which sentence is correct?

① "I'm making a cake."  
② "I'm making a cake."  
③ "I'm making a cake."  
④ "I'm making a cake."

What is a topic sentence?

① A sentence that expresses the main idea.  
② A sentence that gives more details.  
③ A sentence that expresses opinion.  
④ A sentence that concludes a paragraph.

An example that gives more details.

① body paragraphs ② body paragraphs ③ introductions ④ conclusions

Which of the following is structurally incorrect?

① I don't allow my little brother to use the mobile phone for so long.  
② I don't let myself be cheated by others.  
③ It's not easy to get my friend changes his mind.  
④ I usually stop my brothers from making noise when I'm studying.

Where should the thesis statement be restated?

① In the introduction.  
② In the body paragraphs.  
③ In the conclusion.  
④ After conclusion.

Which sentence is correct?

① What is the reason with your illness?  
② What is your illness caused?  
③ What is the cause for your illness?  
④ What is the cause for your illness?

Which sentence is correct?

① "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.  
② "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.  
③ "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.  
④ "Where do you live?" asked Ahmed.

Which sentence is correct?

① What a fantastic film,  
② What a fantastic film;  
③ What a fantastic film!  
④ What a fantastic film!

Which sentence has the correct end?

① You are clever, aren't you:  
② You are clever, aren't you!  
③ You are clever, aren't you?  
④ You are clever, aren't you!

Which sentence is correct?

① Nada said "My father is a teacher."  
② Nada said, "My father is a teacher."  
③ Nada said, "My father is a teacher."  
④ Nada said, "My father is a teacher?"

What is the last paragraph in the essay called?

① conclusion ② body paragraph ③ introduction ④ exposition

When you conclude your essay, you should

① review your supporting ideas  
② exclude your supporting ideas  
③ develop the main idea  
④ write the conclusion of your essay.





## Exercises on Translation

space exploration has broadened man's knowledge of the universe and makes communication available all over the world.

العلماء.

- ⑤ ربح اختراع الفضاء معرفة الإنسان بالكون وجعل الاتصال متاحاً في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- ⑥ ربح استكشاف الفضاء معرفة الإنسان بالكون وجعل الاتصال متاحاً في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- ⑦ ربح استكشاف الفضاء معرفة الإنسان بالكون وجعل الاتصال متاحاً في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- ⑧ ربح استكشاف الفضاء معرفة الإنسان بالكون وجعل الاتصال متاحاً في جميع أنحاء العالم.

sports play a very important role in forming man's character. They teach us patience, co-operation, self-confidence and sports spirit.

⑤ تلعب الرياضة دوراً مهماً جداً في تكوين شخصية الإنسان. فهي تعلمنا الصبر والتعاون والثقة بالنفس والروح الرياضية.

⑥ تلعب الرياضة دوراً مهماً جداً في إخبار شخصية الإنسان. فهي تعلمنا الصبر والتعاون والثقة بالنفس والروح الرياضية.

⑦ تلعب الرياضة دوراً مهماً جداً في تكوين شخصية الرجل. فهي تعلمنا الصبر والتعاون والثقة بالنفس والروح الرياضية.

⑧ لعبت الرياضة دوراً مهماً جداً في تكوين شخصية الإنسان. فهي تعلمنا الصبر والتعاون والثقة بالنفس والروح الرياضية.

The computer has helped man achieve great miracles in many fields mainly scientific research, work and entertainment.

⑤ ساعد الكمبيوتر الإنسان على تحقيق معجزات عظيمة في مجالات عديدة أهمها البحث العلمي والعمل والترفيه.

⑥ ساعد الكمبيوتر الإنسان على تحقيق معجزات عظيمة في مجالات عديدة أهمها البحث العلمي والعمل والترفيه.

⑦ ساعد الكمبيوتر الإنسان على تحقيق معجزات عظيمة في مجالات عديدة أهمها البحث العلمي والعمل والترفيه.

⑧ ساعد الكمبيوتر الإنسان على تحقيق معجزات عظيمة في مجالات عديدة أهمها البحث العلمي والعمل والإعلام.

We must give interest to children and develop their talents so that they may have the ability to innovate and invent, not just imitate.

⑤ يجب الاهتمام بالأطفال وتنمية مواهبهم حتى تكون لديهم القدرة على الإبداع والاكتشاف وليس التقليد فقط.

⑥ يجب الاهتمام بالأطفال وتنمية مواهبهم حتى تكون لديهم القدرة على الإبداع والاكتشاف وليس التقليد فقط.

⑦ يجب الاهتمام بالأطفال وتنمية مواهبهم حتى تكون لديهم القدرة على الإبداع والاكتشاف وليس التقليد فقط.

⑧ يجب الاهتمام بالأطفال وتنمية مواهبهم حتى تكون لديهم القدرة على الإبداع والاكتشاف وليس التقليد فقط.

Life in camps has great benefits as it teaches us co-operation, self-dependence and sacrificing for others.

⑤ الحياة في المخيمات لها فوائد كبيرة لأنها تعلمنا التعاون والاعتماد على الذات والمشاركة من أجل الآخرين.

⑥ الحياة في المخيمات لها فوائد كبيرة لأنها تعلمنا التعاون والاعتماد على الآخرين والتضحية من أجل الآخرين.

⑦ الحياة في المخيمات لها فوائد كبيرة لأنها تعلمنا التعاون والاعتماد على الذات والتضحية من أجل الآخرين.

⑧ الحياة في المخيمات لها فوائد كبيرة لأنها تعلمنا التعاون والاعتماد على الذات والتضحية من أجل الآخرين.

The government makes great efforts to provide work chances for the youth by building factories and making the best use of our wide desert.

⑤ تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لتوفير فرص عمل للشباب من خلال بناء المصانع والاستفادة القصوى من صحرائنا الواسعة.

⑥ تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لتوفير فرص عمل للشباب من خلال بناء المصانع والاستفادة القصوى من صحرائنا الواسعة.

⑦ تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لتوفير فرص عمل للمواطنين من خلال بناء المصانع والاستفادة القصوى من أراضيها الواسعة.

⑧ تبذل الحكومة جهوداً كبيرة لتوفير فرص عمل للمواطنين من خلال بناء المصانع والاستفادة القصوى من صحرائنا الواسعة.

The government seeks to provide a bright future for the coming generations. They are the hope that will preserve the history and heritage of our country.

⑤ تسعى الحكومة لتوفير مستقبل مشرق للأجيال القادمة. هم الأمل الذي سيحفظ تاريخ وتراث بلدنا.

⑥ تسعى الحكومة لتوفير مستقبل مشرق للأجيال الماضية. هم الأمل الذي سيحفظ تاريخ وتراث بلدنا.

⑦ تسعى الحكومة لتوفير مستقبل مشرق للأجيال القادمة. هم الأمل الذي سيحفظ تاريخ وتراث بلدنا.

⑧ سعت الحكومة لتوفير مستقبل مشرق للأجيال القادمة. هم الأمل الذي سيحفظ تاريخ وتراث بلدنا.



The Egyptian woman is the main pillar of the family. She sacrifices everything she has for the happiness and success of every member of the family.

المرأة المصرية هي الركيزة الأساسية للأسرة. إنها تضحي بكل ما لديها من أجل سعادة ورفاه كل فرد من أفراد الأسرة. المرأة المصرية هي الركيزة الأساسية للأسرة. إنها تضحي بكل ما لديها من أجل سعادة ورفاه كل فرد من أفراد الأسرة.

- 1 Egyptian youth must make all impossible efforts to achieve progress and keep pace with scientific and technological development in the world.
- 2 Egyptian youth must make all possible efforts to achieve progress and keep pace with scientific and technological development in the world.
- 3 Egyptian youth must make all possible efforts to achieve progress and keep pace with scientific and technological development in the world.
- 4 Egyptian youth must make all possible efforts to achieve progress and keep pace with scientific and technological development in the country.

دوماً ما تقدر مصر بعلمائها البارزين للعلم يشكلون عقول الأجيال الجديدة وتساعد إبداعاتهم واختراعاتهم في تقدم البشرية بشكل كبير.

- 5 Egypt has always been proud of its distinguished scientists because they shape the minds of new generations.
- 6 Egypt has always been proud of its distinguished scientists because they shape the minds of new generations.
- 7 Egypt has always been proud of its distinguished scientists because they shape the minds of new generations.
- 8 Egypt has always been proud of its distinguished scientists because they shape the minds of new generations.

يسعى حديثي التخرج إلى الحصول على وظيفة حكومية ولكن بلا جدوى فقد أصبح الأمر أشبه بالمستحيل.

- 9 Recent graduates seek to get a governmental job, but in vain, as it has become almost impossible.
- 10 Recent graduates seek to get a governmental job, but in vain, as it has become almost impossible.
- 11 Recent graduates seek to get a governmental job, but in vain, as it has become almost impossible.
- 12 Recent graduates seek to get a governmental job, but in vain, as it has become almost impossible.

يهدف الرئيس دائماً إلى أن يتطور دياره أكثر فأكثر في الميادين المختلفة. من أجل سعادته عليه أن يخطط للمستقبل.

- 13 Man always aims to develop his life more and more in various fields. To have happiness, he must plan for the future.
- 14 Man always aims to develop his life more and more in various fields. To have happiness, he must plan for the future.
- 15 Man always aims to develop his life more and more in various fields. To have happiness, he must plan for the future.
- 16 Man always aims to develop his life more and more in various fields. To have happiness, he must plan for the future.

يسعى التعليم إلى تدريب الأجيال الصاعدة على المشاركة والتعبير عن الآراء والتفكير البناء.

- 17 Education seeks to train future generations to participate and express opinions, constructive criticism.
- 18 Education seeks to train future generations to participate and express opinions, constructive criticism.
- 19 Education seeks to train future generations to participate and express opinions, constructive criticism.
- 20 Education seeks to train future generations to participate and express opinions, constructive criticism.

if we don't arrive when we say we will.

about their children's achievements.

about the idea; he was the first to accept.

to the bridge for three more days.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.

black shoes.



open long. The theatre was closed by the Puritans<sup>(11)</sup>, who did not approve of entertainment. The Globe never opened again, and the building was finally torn down<sup>(12)</sup> in 1644.

Theatre lovers in England never forgot the Globe, and in 1970, a decision was made to rebuild it as close to the original design as possible. Imagine how people felt when, in 1989, those working on the new Globe came across some of the original building only about 100 meters from the new theatre. They were building the new theatre almost in the original Globe's location<sup>(13)</sup>. The new Globe opened in 1999 and has since won many awards as one of the best tourist attractions<sup>(14)</sup> in Europe. Since the new theatre opened, hundreds of thousands of people have attended Shakespearean performances such as *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, *As You Like It*, and *Henry V*. Shakespeare, where are you now? At the Globe, of course!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 What won an award for the best attraction in Europe?
  - a) Romeo and Juliet
  - b) Shakespeare's plays
  - c) The Globe Theatre
  - d) The original performance
- 2 What is the main focus of this passage?
  - a) Interesting attractions in Europe
  - b) Shakespeare and the Globe Theatre
  - c) Shakespeare's plays and poems
  - d) The first play at the Globe Theatre
- 3 Which is probably NOT true about plays at the Globe in the 1500s?
  - a) Actors didn't use very many objects on stage.
  - b) The shows were very popular.
  - c) The audience said things to actors on stage.
  - d) The shows were usually performed at night.
- 4 Which is true about the new Globe Theatre?
  - a) It was open from 1500-1616.
  - b) A fire happened there around 1970
  - c) Workers finished it in 1989.
  - d) People could see plays there in 1999
- 5 During what kind of scene did the fire at the Globe start?
  - a) During a battle scene
  - b) During a party scene
  - c) During a scene in which witches cooked something
  - d) During a scene on a beach after a boat sank
- 6 The word 'come across' in the passage means.....
  - a) cover
  - b) throw
  - c) discover
  - d) great
- 7 Which of the following sentences can be a good paraphrasing for the last paragraph in the passage?
  - a) Theatre lovers in England always remembered the Globe so they rebuilt it as close to the original design.
  - b) Theatre lovers in England never remembered the Globe so they rebuilt it as close to original design.
  - c) Theatre lovers closed the Globe and didn't rebuild it as close to the original design.
  - d) Theatre lovers opened the Globe in 1999 far from the original building and has since won many awards.
- 8 Shakespeare's plays ..... at the Globe Theatre.
  - a) were destroyed
  - b) were performed
  - c) were closed
  - d) were torn down

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Mr Al Dallil always has all his students take ..... in discussions.
  - a) place
  - b) part
  - c) off
  - d) away
- 2 Most plastic ..... oil.
  - a) are made from
  - b) is made from
  - c) is made of
  - d) are made of
- 3 My sister took this picture when I .....
  - a) wasn't looking
  - b) didn't look
  - c) don't look
  - d) am looking
- 4 I don't feel like ..... for a walk today.
  - a) going
  - b) to go
  - c) to going
  - d) go
- 5 He didn't play any matches ..... he had broken his leg.
  - a) until
  - b) before
  - c) after
  - d) while
- 6 He is said to ..... kidnapped on the journey.
  - a) have
  - b) been
  - c) have been
  - d) will be
- 7 ..... cars aren't always expensive.
  - a) Used
  - b) Using
  - c) To use
  - d) Use
- 8 ..... cars isn't always expensive.
  - a) Used
  - b) Using
  - c) To uses
  - d) Use
- 9 My grandpa sometimes gets ..... and doesn't even know what day it is.
  - a) confusing
  - b) confessed
  - c) confusion
  - d) confused
- 10 He is starving ..... he has eaten nothing for two days.
  - a) when
  - b) before
  - c) so
  - d) since
- 11 My sister ..... the ironing at the moment.
  - a) does
  - b) is doing
  - c) is making
  - d) makes
- 12 We live ..... the second floor.
  - a) at
  - b) in
  - c) on
  - d) from
- 13 She can't come out because she's got to ..... the washing up.
  - a) made
  - b) do
  - c) got
  - d) gave
- 14 It is ..... of a manager's job to help people with their problems.
  - a) part
  - b) apart
  - c) a part
  - d) party
- 15 She ..... put in charge until they had known her well.
  - a) didn't
  - b) hasn't
  - c) hadn't
  - d) wasn't
- 16 He ..... promoted due to his efforts.
  - a) got
  - b) has
  - c) had
  - d) were
- 17 It was not ..... for women to go to university in the past.
  - a) rare
  - b) foreign
  - c) strange
  - d) common
- 18 I ..... just finished doing the exercise when my father returned home.
  - a) had
  - b) have
  - c) was
  - d) will have
- 19 It's expected that the world oil reserve will run .....
  - a) out
  - b) out of
  - c) across
  - d) into
- 20 She couldn't remember ..... the criminal was like.
  - a) how
  - b) what
  - c) why
  - d) whose
- 21 ..... awful piece of news that is!
  - a) What
  - b) What a
  - c) How
  - d) What an
- 22 I feel ..... very well ..... the door when I left.
  - a) to lock
  - b) to locking
  - c) lock
  - d) locking



Finish the following dialogue:

Eman who has just arrived at Cairo Airport.

Welcome to Cairo. Can I see your passport, please?

- Officer Eman  
Officer Eman  
Officer Eman  
Officer Eman  
Officer Eman  
Officer Eman  
Officer Eman
1. Welcome to Cairo.
  2. I've come to attend a conference.
  3. Four nights.
  4. It'll be enough to see the pyramids.
  5. Of course.
  6. I'm sure I will. Thanks a lot.
  7. ?
  8. ?
  9. ?

**A Translate into Arabic:**

- 1 Sports have become one of the most effective means of achieving peace and stability throughout the world.
- 2 It is difficult for youth to buy a flat and if he finds one for rent he has to pay a sum of money that he can't afford.
- 3 Egypt is actually in need of wise people capable of modernizing the educational system and achieving justice among people.

**B Translate into English:**

- 1 ينبغي عليك ان يكون لديك شخصية قوية، فبادرة على الابتكار والاعتماد على الذات.
- 2 نتمنى الحكومة اهتماما كبيرا بالمرأة وتوفير لها التعليم والوظائف والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية.
- 3 لقد دخلت التكنولوجيا الحديثة في المدارس في كل أنحاء مصر ويدير الطلبة على استخدام أجهزة الكمبيوتر.

**C Write a paragraph of (120 words) about "Huge benefits from small changes"**

**Enrich your language**

stability	الاستقرار	rent	يؤجر	medical care	الرعاية الصحية
deny	ينكر	sum	مبلغ	justice	العدالة
flat	شقة	afford	يتحمل تكاليف		النظام التعليمي
social	اجتماعي	modernizing	التحديث	educational system	

انتظروا الجزء الثاني

من كتاب الصف الثالث الثانوى

الاسم: .....  
اللقب: .....

Units

**Main Vocabulary**

الإنجليزية	العربية	الفرنسية	اللاتينية
digital	رقمي	حقيقي / لا مفر منه	inevitable
state	حالة / يتوزع	كفاءة	efficiency
postpone	تأجيل	أساس	basis
difficulty	صعوبة	يتعذر / يتعذر	improve
change	تغيير / يغير	القرار	suggestion
imagine	يتخيل	في الواقع	actually
differently	بشكل مختلف	ممارسة / تدريب	practice
conflict	صراع / خلاف	قوي / صلب / خشن	tough
How about	ماذا عن	يتذكر	mention
several	عدة	بعض	reason for
urgent	طارئ / عاجل	خطأ	mistake
involve	يتضمن / يبرط	أولئك	parents
strategy	استراتيجية	أجداد	grandparents
mental health	الصحة العقلية	وصف	description
priority	أولوية	يخفف على	click on
avoid	يتجنب	يخفف / كتم الصوت	mute
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	مسار / يساوي	equal
organised	منظم	هجرة	skill
		متعب / مضطرب	exhausted

**Reading**

**Procrastination?**

**Blame your brain!**

Have you ever tried to get something done, but found that you don't make much progress? Perhaps you do ten minutes of work, then start doing something else, like reading text messages.

Starting one task then stopping to do something else or not starting the task in the first place is called procrastination.



Even if you may put yourself under a lot of pressure to catch up with the other students in class, you may have set an unrealistic goal to get something done in a certain time.



What is going on in the brain which makes us avoid doing something, even though we know we should do it? Scientists suggest we imagine that there are two parts of our brain, our present self and our future self. The present self wants to feel good right now and see the benefits of the work you're doing immediately.

3 ... It's inevitable that the two selves come into conflict. If the present self wins, you usually find yourself procrastinating. How can you deal with these two different selves so you can keep up efficiency levels and improve your time management skills? One suggestion is that you try to please your present self.

4 ... Alternatively, you could try to focus on the benefits that reaching your long term goals will bring you. Try imagining how good it would feel to achieve them and holding on to that feeling.

To: Ahmed@mail.com  
From: Ahmed@mail.com  
Dear 20-year-old Ahmed,

I know you're finding life tough at the moment. You're experiencing stress at school and you're working hard with your sports training. You're finding it harder at your new school because the schoolwork is a lot more difficult than it was at your old school. You have more homework so it is harder to find time to practise swimming and running. How about telling your teachers about the problems you're having and asking for help?

Try to remember that life is actually quite easy at the moment compared to now. It will be later, even though you might not believe me about that. When you're my age, you'll be really good at time management. You'll be able to balance your schoolwork and your sport practice. I know you want to be like Ahmed Elgendy one day. Don't worry - you'll achieve amazing things.

Enjoy the free time that you have now! Don't forget to spend time doing things that improve your well-being, like talking to family. Play football with your friends at the weekend.

You're going to be just fine but remember to ask for help when you need it and enjoy the free time that you have so you don't end up feeling exhausted and burnt out.

See you in 9 years,  
20-year-old Ahmed

كتاب قواعد المذاكرة  
للتأهول العامة



the correct word to complete the sentence.

on those who harm us. We should respect the law. (a) cure (b) average (c) advantage (d) advantage

spending the weekend in the country? (a) decided (b) thought (c) agreed (d) agreed

asked me for help if you were feeling so stressed! (a) had (b) having (c) have (d) have

making such mistakes. (a) avoid (b) avoid (c) refuse (d) intend

you are worried about things; it is best to concentrate on the things you (a) might (b) might (c) can (d) have

need to increase our ..... if we want to meet our objectives. (a) equality (b) facility (c) equality (d) productivity

the biology exam; I'm so worried. (a) pass (b) pass (c) to pass (d) passing

new ways of working. (a) into (b) into (c) to (d) back

me finish my homework before they allow me to watch TV. (a) get (b) get (c) tell (d) make

our project done last night so now we can relax. (a) got (b) got (c) allow (d) make

your screen so I can see what the problem is, please? (a) mute (b) mute (c) install (d) join

this man in the club a year ago. (a) to see (b) to see (c) had seen (d) to seeing

with my classmates, I need to study a lot this weekend. (a) up (b) up (c) into (d) in

off the computer when you've finished with it. (a) switch (b) switch (c) to switch (d) to switching

us from playing football. (a) allowed (b) allowed (c) made (d) stopped

The students found the test difficult and it led to a ..... in their motivation. (a) produce (b) raise (c) progress (d) decline

Mental exhaustion and loss of energy are symptoms of ..... (a) turnout (b) strikeout (c) cutout (d) burnout

when you go to Sharm El-Sheikh? (a) to do (b) to do (c) will do (d) do

is how good you feel in your body and how happy you are. (a) Self-care (b) Stress (c) Well-being (d) Mental health

I am going to have a new washing machine. (a) mode (b) installed (c) installed (d) done

I want to see you; I've missed you so much, Mum. (a) Turn the camera (b) off (c) on (d) up



in suggested that physical activity can improve our levels of concentration and then go for a walk or do some sport. You may discover the problem here are lots of strategies to choose from to increase your productivity. Or you,

241

... has increased their efficiency and saved time and effort.

[illegible]



Productivity is one of the most necessary qualities useful citizens should have. It enables them to share effectively in development projects as well as in most fields of work.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

تعتبر الإنتاجية من أهم السمات التي يجب أن يتمتع بها المواطنون الصالحون، فهي تمكنهم من المشاركة بفاعلية في مشروعات التنمية وكذلك في معظم مجالات العمل.

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
It was a very cold day in winter. I didn't have a coat and I was .....  
A) chilling B) chiller C) freezing D) petrified

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
The news story about the match missed out the injured player so there was bias by .....  
A) omission B) mislead C) spin D) inaccurate

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
The lecturer here is .....  
A) assistant B) assistant C) teacher D) physicist

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
The role model enters teams into many different international .....  
A) role model B) courts C) Grand Slams D) tournaments

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
My sister Marwa is never ..... and always spends a lot of time explaining my homework to me.  
A) inaccurate B) kind C) patient D) impatient

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
When you want to introduce an opposite opinion when you are writing, you can say .....  
A) in the other hand B) On the other hand C) On one side D) a question

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
At the top of a tabloid news story there is usually .....  
A) a headline B) your name C) a photo D) a question

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
When writing a formal report, you should use .....  
A) contractions B) exclamation marks C) a pencil D) passive forms

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
Which of the following is correctly structured?  
A) By next year, I will buy a new car. B) By next year, I should have bought a new car. C) By next year, I will have bought a new car. D) By next year, I should have bought a new car.

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
Although we are surrounded by these mass-produced devices, this does not mean that their use should be implemented in the future. This could be part of an essay about .....  
A) technology B) equality C) mobile phones D) films

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
The car broke down and I couldn't put my finger on the cause. This means that I .....  
A) couldn't ask someone why the car had broken down. B) couldn't know the reason why the car had broken down. C) couldn't touch the car engine. D) couldn't reach the car engine.

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
In his advertisement, he left out the fact that the flat isn't opposite the Nile to make others buy it for a higher price. This is bias by .....  
A) omission B) placement C) omission D) replacement

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
You should ..... speaking English with native speakers to speak fluently.  
A) spin B) avoid C) decide D) hope

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
You should ..... your voice.  
A) practise B) arouse C) raise D) rise

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
I can't hear you, please, ..... your voice.  
A) arise B) arouse C) raise D) rise

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
You ..... your father yesterday, the problem was too serious for you to solve alone.  
A) should consult B) shouldn't have consulted C) didn't have to consult D) shouldn't have consulted

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
You have to ..... your mobile phone before you enter the meeting.  
A) turn B) mute C) destroy D) disappear

Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.  
You have to ..... your mobile phone before you enter the meeting.  
A) turn B) mute C) destroy D) disappear



- text talks about  
 difficulties finding pilots in Egypt.  
 problems women have had in finding jobs.  
 problems determination of one woman.  
 inspirational which is important for many women  
 documentary which summarises the final paragraph is .....  
 sentence the documentary will help you learn to fly.  
 watching the documentary will help you create your own dreams.  
 learning about Loffia's life will help you create your own dreams.  
 even if you cannot fly, you can still be famous.  
 even though this woman is no longer alive, we can still learn a lot from her.  
 even though this woman is no longer alive, we can still learn a lot from her.  
 Elnadi's achievements .....  
 Elnadi's achievements .....  
 helped other Arab women they will have problems learning to fly.  
 taught Arab women they will have problems learning to fly.  
 and her story were made into a film.  
 caused anger in the world of aviation.  
 caused her pilot's licence .....  
 Elnadi earned her pilot's licence .....  
 when she was seventy.  
 before she was thirty years old.  
 Elnadi made the headlines .....  
 winning a race to Alexandria.  
 for crashing a plane in a race  
 for flying alone in a race.  
 coming second in a race to Cairo.

**B:**

Archaeologists working at the ancient site of Thonis-Heracleion have made a remarkable new discovery. They have found baskets filled with fruit dating back to the fourth century BCE! Before the city disappeared under the sea in the second century BCE, hundreds of ships had been visiting Thonis-Heracleion every day and it was Egypt's largest port on the Mediterranean. The city had been forgotten until it was explored by a French archaeologist, Franck Goddio, in the year 2000 CE.

Although archaeologists had raised many large statues and metal objects from the sea at Thonis-Heracleion before this, Goddio said that he thought the discovery of the basket was incredible. This is because fruit does not usually last for very long at all. However, although metal and stone statues are more valuable, everyday objects such as a fruit basket can often teach archaeologists a lot more about people in history. For example, historians learned what the Romans ate after finding bread dating back to 79 AD, when the volcano Vesuvius erupted and covered the town of Herculaneum in rocks and ash. Similarly, archaeologists learnt what people ate in Britain in around 2000 BCE after finding a spoon that had been buried with food on it.

The basket at Thonis-Heracleion was filled with grape seeds and the fruit of a doum palm tree. They probably survived because they had been kept in an underground room.

In the next ten years, a lot more of Thonis-Heracleion will have been discovered. In fact, Goddio claimed that only 3% of the site had been explored so far. Consequently, archaeologists will probably be finding many more inspiring objects in the future.



From the text, find the expression that means 'make it possible for someone'.

- a opened doors for
- b overcome the difficulties
- c What is the main idea of the passage?
- d Thonis-Heracleion was explored in the year 2000 CE.
- e An exciting discovery in Egypt.
- f 97% of the site of Thonis-Heracleion could be explored.
- g The underlined word erupted in the second paragraph is similar in meaning to
- h exploded
- i Thonis-Heracleion
- j was a name of a famous archaeologist
- k is a modern Egyptian city
- l was an ancient Egyptian port city
- m was a French archaeologist
- n The baskets discovered in site of Thonis-Heracleion were filled with fruit dating back to
- o the year 2000 CE
- p the third century BCE
- q Historians learned what the Romans ate due to finding
- r a spoon
- s According to the article, which of the following is incorrect?
- t Archaeologists are likely to find many more inspiring objects in the future.
- u There was bread in the basket at Thonis-Heracleion.
- v Archaeologists could learn from everyday objects more than metal objects and statues
- w Archaeologists lifted many large statues and metal objects from the sea at Thonis-Heracleion.

The underlined word this in the second paragraph refers to

- a the astonishing discovery of the basket of fruit
- b the remains inside the site
- c the site of Thonis-Heracleion
- d an expensive metal

Read the sentences then choose the correct translation from A, B, C or D.

- A The Ministry of Education is interested in developing students innovation and enhancing their skills so that they can keep pace with scientific research all over the world and contribute to development projects in their country.
- B The Ministry of Education is interested in developing students skills and enhancing their world and contribute to development projects in their country.
- C The Ministry of Culture is interested in developing students skills and enhancing their pirt of innovation so that they can keep pace with scientific progress all over the world and contribute to development projects in their country.
- D The Ministry of Education is interested in developing students' skills and enhancing their vrit of innovation so that they can keep pace with scientific progress all over the world and contribute to development plans in their country.

تتمتع وزارة التربية والتعليم بالتعليم بتقنية مهارات الطلاب وتعتبر روح الابتكار لديهم ليكتفوا قاردين على مواكبة الاز

العلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

المعلمى فى كل اثناء العالم وساهوا فى مشروعات التنمية فى بلادهم.

ان نتعلم من اخطائنا.

Do not concern yourself with criticizing others with objectivity. Be positive, work hard and respect others. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to learn from our mistakes.

Do not concern yourself with attacking others without objectivity. Be positive, work hard and agree with the other. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to learn from our mistakes.

Do not concern yourself with criticizing others without creativity. Be positive, work hard and accept the other. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to teach from our mistakes.

Do not concern yourself with criticizing others without objectivity. Be positive, work hard and accept the other. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to learn from our mistakes.

There are a lot of jobs that can be done online. These jobs vary according to the tasks required and suit a lot of people who are currently unemployed.

هناك القليل من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتطلبها العمل، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكن القيام بها عبر الإنترنت. تختلف هذه الوظائف وفقًا للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير.



Write an essay of about 200 words on your duty towards your country.





## Practice Exercises

2

1. Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.

- 1 You look exhausted! I think you should consider ..... to bed earlier.  
 a to go      b of going      c going      d go
- 2 I like to go to work on time. I usually ..... early to avoid the traffic.  
 a sit down      b turn off      c catch up      d set off
- 3 I don't think you should risk ..... out in this heat. It's far too hot right now.  
 a going      b to go      c go      d to going
- 4 Do your parents allow you ..... out later at weekends?  
 a stay      b to stay      c to staying      d staying
- 5 By next October, my father ..... a bigger house.  
 a will buy      b would buy      c will have bought      d had bought
- 6 You can use this expression to say goodbye at the end of an email to a good friend:  
 a Kind regards      b I enjoyed reading your email      c All the best      d It's great to hear from you
- 7 What can you use when writing an email to a friend?  
 a contractions      b full forms      c passive voice      d direct speech
- 8 Which option is not a good way to finish an email to a close friend?  
 a See you soon      b Yours sincerely      c Goodbye      d All the best
- 9 Which of the following is correctly structured to show regret?  
 a I should revise well for the exam.      b I shouldn't revise well for the exam.  
 c I oughtn't to have revised well for the exam.      d I oughtn't have revised well for the exam.
- 10 Some employees are often overworked and are clearly heading for burnout. Despite this, they carry on, as they are aware of the need to increase their productivity. This could be part of an article about the problem of .....  
 a mental health and well-being.      b time management of certain employees.  
 c alternative ways of working.      d the need for companies to increase productivity.
- 11 Don't worry; I won't leave until you .....  
 a have been arrived      b had arrived      c will arrive      d have arrived
- 12 My friend ..... the present and died it in ribbon.  
 a tricked      b appeared      c trapped      d wrapped
- 13 Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?  
 a I haven't seen him for the last time we met in the club.  
 b I haven't seen him since the last time we met in the club.  
 c I haven't seen him since the last time we have met in the club.  
 d I didn't see him since the last time we have met in the club.
- 14 My sister is a nurse. She won a medal ..... for her work during the Coronavirus pandemic.  
 a competition      b medal      c award      d race
- 15 I had heard the good news, I immediately congratulated my friend.  
 a Then      b So      c Once      d Before
- 16 Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a I won't go home until I had finished all my work.  
 b I won't go home until I finished all my work.  
 c I didn't go home until I have finished all my work.  
 d I didn't go home until I had finished all my work.

He always works to a plan and organizes his time perfectly. He has an excellent skill.  
 He consumes time consuming  
 He advises me to stop studying when I feel exhausted because my concentration

increases  
 always try to avoid ..... with bad friends.  
 a declines      b improves      c moves      d to mixing

mixing  
 which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?  
 a Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 b Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 c Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 d Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.  
 Adel, who lives in Aswan, is a part-time accountant.

A:

Due to the global pandemic, the Egyptian Ministry of ICT noted an almost 50% increase in internet consumption as workers were encouraged to work from home. Many saw this as a positive move and some companies have closed their offices as their employees continue to work from home. However, there are also disadvantages that need to be considered.

A significant advantage for the company is increased productivity. The home office ensures a higher level of efficiency as it is adapted perfectly to the employee. There are no distractions by workmates or background noise and they have their favourite food too! With less time needed to commute, they can spend more time with their families. This increases well-being which, in turn, can increase productivity.

Despite the many advantages, there are also some disadvantages. Many who worked from home claimed that they worked more hours than in the office. Furthermore, some complained that although they saved money on transport they had increased costs in water and electricity. Poor furniture or physical space is also another issue to take into account. However, the biggest problem has been the feeling of isolation and lack of personal contact with workmates. With 300 million workers globally suffering from mental health issues as a result of working from home, doctors are claiming mental health problems will be the next problem to affect the world.

- 17 Which one is not an advantage of working from home mentioned in the text?  
 a more time with family      b higher levels of productivity  
 c more time to work      d increased feeling of well-being
- 18 Which one is not a disadvantage of working from home mentioned in the text?  
 a headaches due to lots of screen time      b less social contact with colleagues  
 c increased mental health problems      d higher cost of bills



...who want to avoid loneliness  
...their families to avoid loneliness  
...company their families to avoid loneliness  
...of the journey to planets such

- the journey to planets such as Mars less  
initial health (d) learn how to cope with stress  
'conditions' in the first paragraph is a synonym of  
(b) results (c) causes (d) circumstances

(b) blue light

- the different time  
astronauts of the future will surely have a lot more than they had in the past  
difficulties  
the future, mental health problems that astronauts could face are likely to be
- (b) facilities**      **(c) time difference**      **(d) problems**  
**(b) more**      **(c) less**      **(d) the same**

the following, more  
(b) more (c) less (d) the

- Read the sentence  
 الماء أساس حياة الإنسان والحيوان والنبات، واستخدامه لا يقتصر على الشرب فقط، بل هو أساس الأمن  
 بالنسبة للإنسان والحيوان. ذلك لأنه من استخدامه بغاية كفاءة.

Water's the basis of human, animal and planet life, and its use is not limited to drinking only, but is the basis of food security for humans and animals. Therefore, it must be

Water is the basis of human, animal and plant life, and its use is not limited to drinking only, but it is also the basis of food security for humans and animals. Therefore, it must be used with great care.

Water is the basis of human, animal and plant life, and its use is not limited to cooking only, but is the basis of food security for humans and animals. However, it must be used with great care.

only, but is the basis of food security for humans and animals with great care. One's well-being is high priority to maintain health and social care. Therefore, we should pay more attention to our well-being, so we can have an influential role in life.

⑤ تُعَدُّ الرعاية الصحية الأولية ضرورية في الحفاظ على الرعاية الاجتماعية. ومن ثم، يجب أن نولي اهتمامًا أكبر لرفاهيتنا، حتى يمكننا أن نلعب دورًا مؤثرًا في الحياة.

(c) من ناحية أخرى، فإنَّ هذه الحقيقة على أنها حجة مضاعفة. ولولا السبب، يجب أن نرى أنَّ ذلك الحادية الواحدة سيكون لنا دور مؤثر في الحياة. بعد أن نرى الحادية الواحدة على أنها حجة مضاعفة، ومن أجل هذا، يجب أن نرى المزيد من الاهتمام للحادية ليكون لنا دور مؤثر في الحياة.

(d) بعد الاهتمام بالنفس والبيئة على الحادثة في الحادثة الصحية والاجتماعية، ولذلك، يجب أن نرى المزيد من الاهتمام بالنفسا ليكون لنا دور مؤثر في الحياة. This in

Encouraging people to work from home is very useful in keeping us away from infection.

ان تشجيع الناس على الإقامة في المنزل مفيد للغاية في وقت انتشار الوباء، ولما بدوره يساعدنا على توفير الوقت والجهد عن العدوى.

إن تشجيع الناس على العمل من المنزل مازال مفيد للغاية في وقت انتشار الوباء، ولما بدوره يساعدنا على توفير المال والجهد والاعتناء عن العدوى.

إن تشجيع الناس على العمل من المنزل مفيد للغاية في وقت انتشار الوباء، ولما بدوره يساعدنا على توفير المال والجهد والاعتناء عن العدوى.

تشجيع الحكومة الناس على العمل من المنزل لأنه مفيد للغاية في وقت علاج الأوبئة. وهذا هو دور الدولة.

- (c)** Reading is very useful. It stimulates the memory centres of your mind and arouses your emotions. Also, it helps recall information and stabilise your emotions.

[illegible]

- الترجمة مفيدة جداً** فهي تثير مراكز التفكير في حياتك، وتغير عقليتك، كما أنها تساعد في استيعاب المعلومات وكذلك امتلاكها.
- A reflective essay of about 200 words on the importance of time management and**





## Practice Exercises

31

1. Choose the correct option from A, B, C or D.
1. The lawyer accused the prisoner ..... in his statement  
 a. of lying      b. to lie      c. with lying      d. of lie
  2. I went to university to get this degree in physics, which means I am now a ..... physicist.  
 a. lecturer      b. important      c. role model      d. qualified
  3. The Egyptian tennis player got into the final ..... of the tournament.  
 a. court      b. Grand Slams      c. round      d. team
  4. The team training together for months before they were given the chance to compete.  
 a. have been      b. had been      c. has been      d. will have been
  5. I expected my friend to help me, but he let me .....  
 a. in      b. off      c. down      d. to
  6. When starting an email to a friend, it is a good idea to .....  
 a. say that you will write to them soon.      b. ask about their school friends.  
 c. give the necessary information they are looking for.  
 d. ask how they are and tell them something about you.
  7. Which expressions can you not use to start your final paragraph in an essay?  
 a. To sum up      b. In conclusion      c. To conclude      d. Firstly
  8. Which expressions introduce a sequence of ideas in an essay? There is more than one answer.  
 a. In conclusion, lastly, In summary  
 c. However, In contrast, Nevertheless  
 b. On the one hand, On the other hand  
 d. Firstly, Secondly, Finally
  9. Which of the following is correctly structured?  
 a. I met Esma last week. I haven't met him since 2018.  
 b. I met Esma last week. I hadn't met him since 2018.  
 c. I will meet Esma next week. I hadn't met him since 2018.  
 d. I have met Esma last week. I hadn't met him since 2018.
  10. This physicist, who broke all the stereotypes of the time, is now a much admired role model for many aspiring female scientists'. This could be part of an article about .....  
 a. the inspiration of historic female figures.  
 b. the difficulties male scientists face in their jobs.  
 c. why it is necessary to be passionate about your job.  
 d. why science is not an easy area to work in.
  11. Efficient teachers usually use different strategies to assess students'. ..... at school.  
 a. replacement      b. movement      c. achievement      d. encouragement
  12. It is not easy to make Peter ..... his mind, he's very stubborn.  
 a. to change      b. changes      c. change      d. to changing
  13. Scientists are still trying to discover more and more about the ..... around us.  
 a. universe      b. astronauts      c. astronauts      d. superstitions
  14. The government has designed a new system to ..... with the floods we sometimes have in coastal cities.  
 a. cure      b. carry      c. cope      d. care
  15. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?  
 a. No sooner I had typed the report, than I emailed the manager.  
 b. No sooner had I typed the report, than I emailed the manager.  
 c. I had no sooner typed the report than I emailed the manager.  
 d. No sooner I had typed the report when I emailed the manager.

..... as a sales manager for twenty years, but now he has his own business.  
 a. is working      b. has worked      c. worked  
 d. worked  
 16. Is the place where people are buried.  
 a. graveyard      b. shipyard      c. mansion  
 d. mansion  
 17. I haven't travelled to my village by train ..... my early childhood.  
 a. ago      b. for      c. since  
 d. since  
 18. The police are looking for a man ..... who has escaped from prison.  
 a. victim      b. convict      c. guard  
 d. guard  
 19. Which of the following is structurally correct?  
 a. It's years since I played football.  
 b. I had played football years ago.  
 c. I had played football years ago.  
 d. I had played football years ago.

20. Which of the following sentences is punctuated correctly?  
 a. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 b. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 c. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 d. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.

21. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 a. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 b. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 c. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 d. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.

22. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 a. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 b. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 c. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 d. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.

23. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 a. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 b. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 c. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 d. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.

24. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 a. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 b. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 c. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.  
 d. Ahmad studied six subjects last term: Arabic, English, biology, chemistry, German and physics.



65 According to the passage, AI can .....  
 a help students only.  
 b replace teachers.  
 c A lot of people are afraid that technology will replace them.  
 d We should not depend on technology.  
 e AI can reduce teachers' workloads.

66 Which of the following is not mentioned in the passage:  
 a help teachers and students.  
 b hinders teachers productivity.  
 c AI can reduce teachers' workloads.  
 d Technology can help teachers to be more creative.  
 e Learning Management Systems offer AI solutions which.....

67 Learning Management Systems offer AI solutions which.....  
 a will replace many classroom teachers in the future.  
 b might provide solutions to some teachers online.  
 c will not be so effective for teachers who do not teach online.  
 d can help online teachers with many of the things they need to do.  
 e Which expression in the text means 'things you have to do every day'?

68 Which expression in the text means 'things you have to do every day'?  
 a every other day b needs c day-to-day d ever since

69 When people retire, they will probably have been working for 40 years or more. But how productive will they have been in that time? We have been studying productivity, and the results are very interesting. Working hours around the world vary, but people in Egypt work an average of 40 hours a week and no more than 48 hours a week, which is similar to most other countries. In the USA, however, many people working in technology and banking often work over 60 hours a week. This could be because phones and laptops mean that people can work even when they are not in the office.

B:

However, a study by Professor Pencavel, from Stanford University in the USA, concluded that these extra hours do not mean a person gets more things done. Professor Pencavel reported that a person's productivity declined very quickly after they had worked 50 hours a week. In fact, a person doing 70 hours a week did the same amount of work as a person doing 55 hours.

There have been several studies into the effects of work on health. The economist, Nolan Pope, studied how the time of day affects productivity, and he found that people are naturally more productive at certain times of the day: in particular, before around 1pm. There have been many other studies into workplace stress, and these indicate that long work hours are linked to exhaustion, burnout and poor health.

In conclusion, to aid our health, it is important that we work around the hours of the day when we are most productive and this should help make us happier.

70 The best title for the passage is.....  
 a Mental health  
 b The effects of work on health  
 c Work and productivity  
 d Creativity and productivity

71 According to the passage, we should.....  
 a increase productivity according to the money.  
 b do extra work however tired we are we get.  
 c work even when we are exhausted to earn more and feel happier.  
 d work when we aren't exhausted to be productive and feel happier.

economist, Nolan Pope, .....  
 considered the relation between working hours and pay.  
 a person doing 55 hours.  
 b concluded that a person doing 70 hours a week could do the same amount of work as a person doing 55 hours.  
 c studied the relation between the time of day and productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

72 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

73 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

74 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

75 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

76 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

77 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

78 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

79 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

80 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

81 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

82 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

83 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

84 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.

85 concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 a concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 b concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 c concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 d concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.  
 e concluded that extra working hours do not increase productivity.



39 You should be ambitious. You must always have some targets and a role model to motivate you to do your best to accomplish all your dreams in life.

يجب أن تكون طموحاً. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائماً مجموعة من الأحلام ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أهدافك في الحياة.

يجب أن تكون صالحاً. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائماً مجموعة من الأهداف ونموذج عالمي لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أحلامك في الحياة.

يجب أن تكون طموحاً. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائماً كمية من الأموال ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق بعض أحلامك في الحياة.

يجب أن تكون طموحاً. فلا بد أن يكون لديك دائماً مجموعة من الأهداف ونموذج يحتذى به لتحفيزك على بذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيق كل أحلامك في الحياة.

40 Education is one of the most important forms of investment This, in turn, enables the ministry of education to create productive and creative citizens.

يعد التعليم من أهم أشكال الاستثمار. وهذا بدوره يمكن الدولة من خلق مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.

يعتبر التعليم من أهم أشكال الاستثمار. وهذا بدوره يمكن وزارة التربية والتعليم من خلق مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.

إن التعليم من أهم نتائج الاستثمار. وهذا بدوره يحفز الحكومة من خلق مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.

التعليم من أقل أشكال الاستثمار. وهذا بدوره يعوق وزارة التربية والتعليم من خلق مواطنين منتجين ومبدعين.

41 Write about 200 words on one of the following:

a A summary of Charles Dickens' Great Expectations, Chapters 1-6

b A report on how women are getting equal work opportunities over the last ten years

انتظروا الجزء الثاني  
من كتاب الصف الثالث الثانوي  
اللهم علماً ينتفع به







الصف الثالث الثانوي



f giants.books.series

الترقيم الذهبي

978.977.9579.39.9

لاي استفسار التواصل على

010 22 50 66 90

70 L.E.

السعر يشمل كتاب الشرح +  
ملحق القصة + كراسة التمرين



توزيع مؤسسة الكوثر بالفجالة

القاهرة - شارع الوزير علاء الدين

خلف مد رسة صحارا

ت. ٠٢/٣٥٨٩٧٠٩٦٠ - ٠١٠٠٠٥٠٥٤٦٠ - ٠١١٤٨٤٥٠٩٨٥



**made by Mansy**

صلى ع النبي وإدعيلى دعوة حلوة

**#دفعة المنوفية 2022**

**#قناة تالتة ثانوى 2022**